owner.lincoln.com

lincolncanada.com



KA1J 19A321 AC

FSC MIX Paper FSC® C102270

March 2019
Third Printing
Litho in U.S.A.

2019 NAUTILUS Owner's Manual

2019 NAUTILUS







Owner's Manual

THE LINCOLN MOTOR COMPANY

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2019

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 201806 20190228210220

California Proposition 65

WARNING: Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling**.

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual 7
Symbols Glossary 7
Data Recording 10
Perchlorate 14
Lincoln Automotive Financial Services 14
Replacement Parts Recommendation 14
Special Notices 15
Mobile Communications Equipment 16
Export Unique Options 16

Environment

Protecting the Environment 17

At a Glance

Instrument Panel 18

Child Safety

General Information 20
Installing Child Restraints 22
Booster Seats 29
Child Restraint Positioning 31
Child Safety Locks 33

Seatbelts

Principle of Operation 35
Fastening the Seatbelts 36
Seatbelt Height Adjustment 38
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime 39
Seatbelt Reminder 40
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance 41
Seatbelt Extension 42

Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™ 43

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation 44
Driver and Passenger Airbags 45
Front Passenger Sensing System 47
Side Airbags 50
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags 51
Safety Canopy™ 51
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator 53
Airbag Disposal 54

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies 55
Remote Control 55
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control 60

MyKey™

Principle of Operation 61
Creating a MyKey 62
Clearing All MyKeys 63
Checking MyKey System Status 63
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems 64
MyKey – Troubleshooting 64

Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking 66
Keyless Entry 70

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Liftgate

Power Liftgate 74

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System 78
Anti-Theft Alarm 80

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column 81
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column 82
Audio Control 82
Voice Control 83
Cruise Control 83
Information Display Control 84
Heated Steering Wheel 85

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers 86
Autowipers 87
Windshield Washers 88
Rear Window Wiper and Washers 88

Lighting

General Information 90
Lighting Control 90
Autolamps 91
Instrument Lighting Dimmer 92
Headlamp Exit Delay 93
Daytime Running Lamps 93
Automatic High Beam Control 93
Front Fog Lamps 95
Adaptive Headlamps 95
Direction Indicators 96
Welcome Lighting 96
Interior Lamps 96
Ambient Lighting 97

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows 99
Global Opening and Closing 100
Exterior Mirrors 100
Interior Mirror 102
Sun Visors 103
Moonroof 103

Instrument Cluster

Gauges 105
Warning Lamps and Indicators 107
Audible Warnings and Indicators 111

Information Displays

General Information 112
Information Messages 118

Climate Control

Automatic Climate Control 138
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate 139
Heated Windshield 140
Heated Rear Window 140
Heated Exterior Mirrors 140
Cabin Air Filter 141
Remote Start 141

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position 142

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Head Restraints 143
Power Seats 146
Memory Function 149
Rear Seats 153
Heated Seats 154
Climate Controlled Seats 155

Garage Door Opener
Universal Garage Door Opener 157

Auxiliary Power Points
Auxiliary Power Points 162
Wireless Accessory Charging 163

Storage Compartments
Glove Compartment 166
Center Console 166
Overhead Console 167

Starting and Stopping the Engine
General Information 168
Keyless Starting 168
Starting a Gasoline Engine 169
Engine Block Heater 172

Unique Driving Characteristics
Auto-Start-Stop 174

Fuel and Refueling
Safety Precautions 177
Fuel Quality 178
Fuel Filler Funnel Location 178
Running Out of Fuel 179
Refueling 180
Fuel Consumption 183

Engine Emission Control
Emission Law 184
Catalytic Converter 185

Transmission
Automatic Transmission 188

All-Wheel Drive
Using All-Wheel Drive 195

Brakes
General Information 200
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes 201
Electric Parking Brake 201
Hill Start Assist 203
Auto Hold 204

Traction Control
Principle of Operation 206
Using Traction Control 206

Stability Control
Principle of Operation 207
Using Stability Control 208

Parking Aids
Principle of Operation 210
Rear Parking Aid 211
Front Parking Aid 211
Side Sensing System 213
Active Park Assist 214
Rear View Camera 223

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

360 Degree Camera 226

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation 229
Using Cruise Control 229
Using Adaptive Cruise Control 230

Driving Aids

Driver Alert 241
Lane Keeping System 242
Blind Spot Information System 248
Cross Traffic Alert 250
Steering 254
Pre-Collision Assist 255
Drive Control 261

Load Carrying

Rear Under Floor Storage 264
Cargo Nets 264
Luggage Covers 265
Roof Racks and Load Carriers 266
Load Limit 267

Towing

Towing a Trailer 272
Trailer Sway Control 273
Recommended Towing Weights 273
Essential Towing Checks 275
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 2.0L 277
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 2.7L 277

Driving Hints

Breaking-In 279
Reduced Engine Performance 279
Economical Driving 279
Driving Through Water 280
Floor Mats 281

Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance 282
Hazard Flashers 283
Fuel Shutoff 283
Jump Starting the Vehicle 284
Post-Crash Alert System 286
Transporting the Vehicle 287

Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need 288
In California (U.S. Only) 289
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only) 290
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only) 291
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada 292
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature 294
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only) 295
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only) 295

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart 297
Changing a Fuse 313

Maintenance

General Information 316
Opening and Closing the Hood 316

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L 318
Under Hood Overview - 2.7L 319
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L 321
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.7L 321
Engine Oil Check 321
Oil Change Indicator Reset 322
Engine Coolant Check 323
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check 328
Brake Fluid Check 328
Washer Fluid Check 329
Fuel Filter 329
Changing the 12V Battery 329
Checking the Wiper Blades 331
Changing the Wiper Blades 331
Adjusting the Headlamps 332
Changing a Bulb 334
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L 334
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.7L 335

Vehicle Care

General Information 337
Cleaning Products 337
Cleaning the Exterior 338
Waxing 339
Cleaning the Engine 340
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades 340
Cleaning the Interior 341
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens 343
Cleaning Leather Seats 343
Repairing Minor Paint Damage 344
Cleaning the Wheels 344
Vehicle Storage 345
Body Styling Kits 346

Wheels and Tires

General Information 347
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit 349
Tire Care 356
Using Summer Tires 370
Using Snow Chains 371
Tire Pressure Monitoring System 372
Changing a Road Wheel 378
Technical Specifications 386

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.0L 388
Engine Specifications - 2.7L 389
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L 390
Motorcraft Parts - 2.7L 391
Vehicle Identification Number 392
Vehicle Certification Label 392
Transmission Code Designation 393
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L 394
Capacities and Specifications - 2.7L 400
Bulb Specification Chart 407

Audio System

General Information 409
Audio Unit 411
USB Port 413
Media Hub 414

SYNC™ 3

General Information 415
Home Screen 431
Using Voice Recognition 432
Entertainment 443

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Climate 456
Phone 459
Navigation 467
Apps 478
Settings 481
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting 501

Accessories

Accessories 519

Lincoln Protect

Lincoln Protect 521

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information 524
Normal Scheduled Maintenance 529
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance 533
Scheduled Maintenance Record 536

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility 557
End User License Agreement 562
Declaration of Conformity 593
Type Approvals 593

DEALER ePROCESS

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Lincoln. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

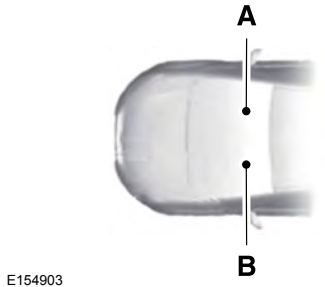
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Air conditioning system

Air conditioning system lubricant type

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



Anti-lock braking system


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks


Battery


Battery acid


Brake fluid - non petroleum based


Brake system



Brake system


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten seatbelt


Flammable


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuel pump reset


Fuse compartment


Hazard flashers


Heated rear window

DEALER ePROCESS


Windshield defrosting system


Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Keep out of reach of children


Lighting control


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Note operating instructions


Horn control


Panic alarm


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Power window lockout


Requires registered technician


Safety alert


See Owner's Manual


See Service Manual


Service engine soon


Passenger airbag activated


Passenger airbag deactivated


Side airbag


Shield the eyes


Stability control


Hill descent control


Trail control


Windshield wiping system

DEP DEALER ePROCESS


Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the regional Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Service Data

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received

DEALER ePROCESS

through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, (for example, your contact information), to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at www.ford.ca, including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries.

Event Data

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Comfort, Convenience and Entertainment Data

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 481).

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Vehicles With a Modem

The modem has a SIM. The modem periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification.

Note: *The modem continues to send this information unless you have all added value services deactivated. Contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. Refer to the regional Ford website for contact information.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Vehicles With SYNC

Mobile Device Data

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 478).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 481).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, see the regional Ford website.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off.

Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

Note: *To switch 911 Assist on or off. See **Settings** (page 481).*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:

Web Address
www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazard-ouswaste/perchlorate

LINCOLN AUTOMOTIVE FINANCIAL SERVICES

Lincoln Automotive Financial Services offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. We are dedicated to providing answers, information and a truly extraordinary experience.

Use the options below to contact us with questions about your account or financing and we will respond promptly:

Web Address
www.credit.lincoln.com

Phone: 1-888-498-8801

Mail: Lincoln Automotive Financial Services

P.O. Box 542000

Omaha, NE 68154-8000

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Lincoln Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Lincoln Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Lincoln Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

Vehicles sold in the United States and Canada

For a detailed description of what is covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty, see your warranty guide that is available online. For more information, refer to our website and download your copy of the warranty guide.

Vehicles sold outside the United States and Canada

For a detailed description of what is covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty, see the warranty guide that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNING: You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector

WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of aftermarket plug-in devices unless approved by Ford. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

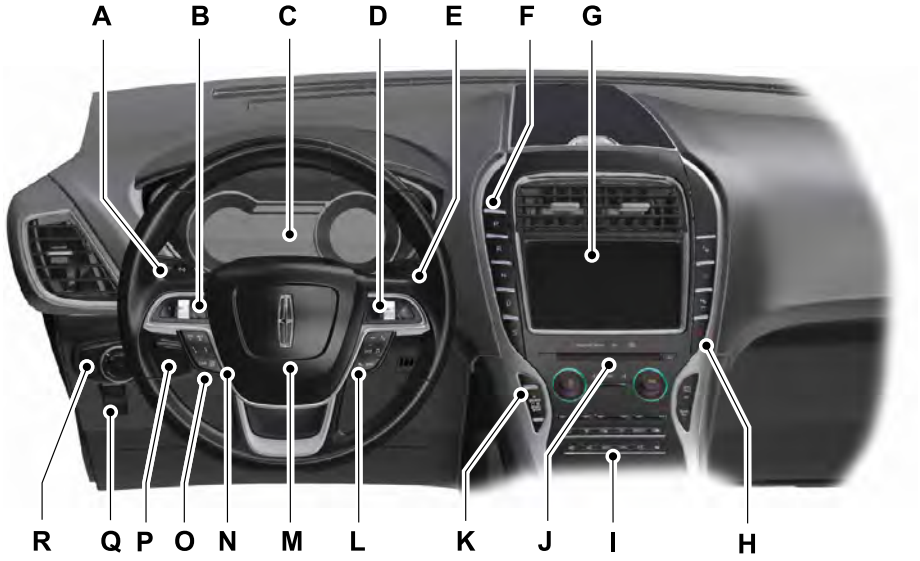
For details about Ford Motor Company's sustainability progress and initiatives visit:

Web Address
www.sustainability.ford.com

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

INSTRUMENT PANEL



E290131

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

A Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 96).
B Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 82). Voice control. See **Voice Control** (page 83).
C Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 105). See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 107).
D Information display control. See **Information Display Control** (page 84).
E Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 86).
F Automatic transmission. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 188).
G Information and entertainment display. See **General Information** (page 415).
H Hazard flashers. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 283).
I Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 138).
J Audio unit. See **Audio Unit** (page 411).
K Start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 168).
L Information display control. See **Information Display Control** (page 84).
M Horn.
N Cruise control. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 229).
O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 81).
P Liftgate control. See **Power Liftgate** (page 74).
Q Parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 201).
R Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 90). Instrument lighting dimmer. See **Instrument Lighting Dimmer** (page 92).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNING: All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to www.tc.gc.ca to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

- You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 47).
- When installing a rear facing child restraint, adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

Child Seats



E142594

Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

WARNING: Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts:

Note: *Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child restraint.*



E142528

1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



E142529

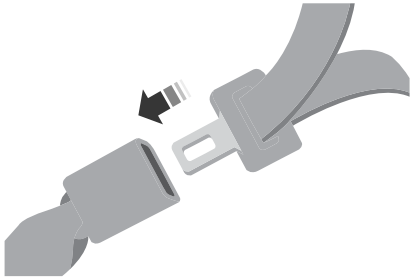
2. After positioning the child restraint in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure that you did not twist the belt webbing.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the belt out.

Note: *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

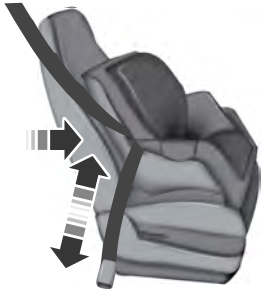
DEALER ePROCESS

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor did not lock, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



E142534

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH)

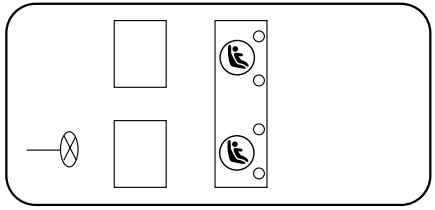
WARNING: Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

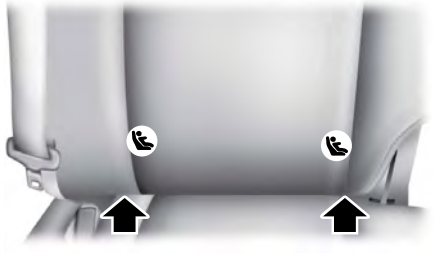
The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors where the seat backrest and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint. However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.



E142535

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child restraint installation at the seating positions marked with the child restraint symbol.



E196697

The LATCH anchors are at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat backrest below the symbols as shown. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child restraint with LATCH attachments.

Follow the instructions on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child restraint only to the anchors shown.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outermost Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

WARNING: The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 20 in (51 cm) apart. You cannot install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments at the center seating position. You can only use LATCH compatible child restraints (with attachments on belt webbing) at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the child restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than 1 in (2.5 cm) when you do this for a proper installation.

If the child restraint is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Combining Seatbelt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Restraints

When used in combination, you may attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child restraint.

Using Tether Straps



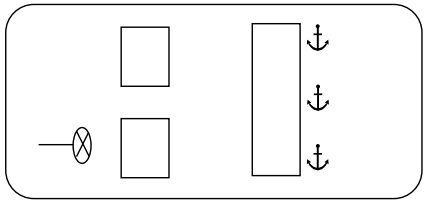
Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.

Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once you install the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

DEALER ePROCESS

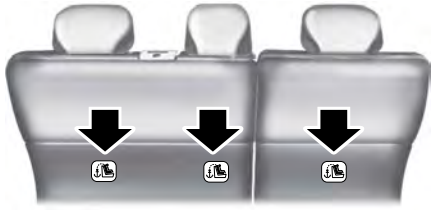


E142537

Perform the following steps to install a child restraint with tether anchors:

Note: *If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For the outermost seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating position, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, you can also remove the head restraints.



E193589

2. Locate the correct anchor behind the gap cover for the selected seating position.



E142539

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
4. Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

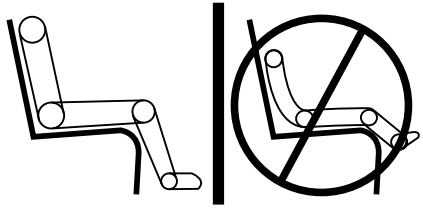
DEP DEALER ePROCESS

BOOSTER SEATS

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age 4 and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



E142596

DEP DEALER ePROCESS


E142597

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

WARNING: Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

DEALER ePROCESS

 **WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

DEALER ePROCESS

Recommendations for Attaching Child Safety Restraints for Children

Restraint Type	Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	Use Any Attachment Method as Indicated Below by X				
		LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt Only
Rear facing child restraint	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child restraint	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)					X
Forward facing child restraint	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child restraint	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)			X	X	

Note: *The child restraint must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See* ***Seats*** *(page 142).*

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

DEALER ePROCESS

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

WARNING: Children must always be properly restrained.

WARNING: Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

WARNING: Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair. Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.

WARNING: Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

All seating positions in your vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- Shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, (except driver seatbelt).
- Height adjuster at the front outermost seating positions.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

- Seatbelt pretensioners at the front outermost and second row outermost seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outermost passenger seating position.



- Seatbelt warning light and chime.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a Safety Canopy airbag deploys.

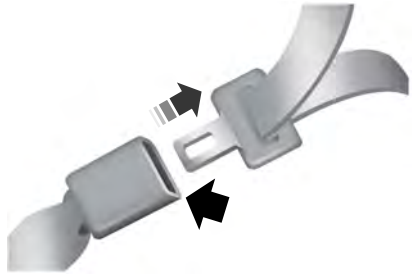
FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The front outermost and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



E142587

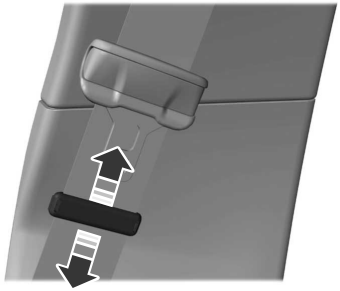
1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure you securely fasten the tongue in the buckle.



E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

Using a Sliding Clip (If Equipped)



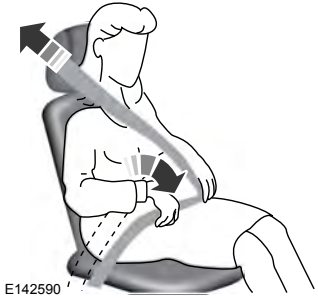
E200788

DEALER ePROCESS

Slide the clip away from the tongue so there is no loose webbing when an occupant or child seat is buckled up. You can also use the sliding clip to raise the tongue and prevent it from rattling or to ease access to the tongue.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

WARNING: Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.


E142590

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelt Locking Modes

WARNING: If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver seatbelt has the vehicle sensitive locking mode. The front outermost passenger and rear seat seatbelts have the vehicle sensitive locking mode and the automatic locking mode.

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if you pull the webbing out too quickly. If the seatbelt retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract. If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

length of webbing back toward the stowed position. For rear seatbelts, recline the rear seat backrest or push the seat backrest cushion away from the seatbelt. Feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt automatically pre-locks. The belt still retracts to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.

When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

Use this mode any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 20).

How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode


E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING: Position the safety belt height adjuster so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

DEALER ePROCESS



E200161

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an indicator chime will sound if the driver seatbelt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Conditions of operation

If	Then
The driver seatbelt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The seatbelt warning lamp illuminates and the indicator chime sounds for a few seconds.
The driver seatbelt is buckled while the warning lamp is illuminated and the indicator chime is sounding...	The seatbelt warning lamp and indicator chime turn off.
The driver seatbelt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The seatbelt warning lamp and indicator chime remain off.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

SEATBELT REMINDER

Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the seatbelt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a chime and illuminate the seatbelt warning lamp when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a seatbelt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid the system turning on the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place on the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

If...	Then...
You and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your seatbelts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning lamp illuminates and an indicator chime sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.
The seatbelt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning lamp illuminates and an indicator chime sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.

DEALER ePROCESS

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

WARNING: While the system allows you to switch it off, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving a crash. We recommend you leave the system switched on. To reduce the risk of injury, do not switch the system on or off while driving your vehicle.

Note: *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Read Steps 1–4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
- The ignition is off.
- The driver and front passenger seatbelts are unbuckled.

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
2. Wait until the seatbelt warning lamp turns off (about 1 minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the seatbelt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the seatbelt warning lamp turns on.
4. While the seatbelt warning lamp is on, buckle and then unbuckle the seatbelt. After Step 4, the seatbelt warning lamp flashes for confirmation.

- This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
- This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle seatbelts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child restraint seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat backrest (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

DEALER ePROCESS

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 337).

SEATBELT EXTENSION

WARNING: Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Only use extensions provided free of charge by Lincoln Motor Company dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.

WARNING: Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.

WARNING: Do not use a seatbelt extension with an inflatable seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not use extensions to change the fit of the belt across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from Lincoln Motor Company dealers. Only Lincoln seatbelt extensions made by the same company which made the original equipment seatbelts, should be used with Lincoln seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your Lincoln vehicle restraint system.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The Vehicle Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Passenger seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicators.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning lamp and tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicators.

How Does the Personal Safety System Work?

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment or in a sudden stop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

DEALER ePROCESS

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

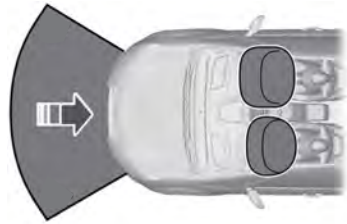
Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

WARNING: Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment or in a sudden stop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 53).

Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

WARNING: National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags

WARNING: Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.



E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

DEALER ePROCESS

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNING: Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



E181984

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either on (enabled) or off (disabled).

The indicator lamp is in the center stack of the instrument panel.

Note: *The passenger airbag status indicator off and on indicator lamps illuminate for a short period of time when you first switch the ignition on to confirm it is functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp and stays lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If you install the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, then switch the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

DEALER ePROCESS

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp and remains illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains lit even after this, advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.
- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat.
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 53).

If the airbag readiness light is lit, do the following:

The driver and adult passengers should check for objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat, or cargo interfering with the seat.

If there are lodged objects, or cargo is interfering with the seat, take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Switch the vehicle off.
- Driver and adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. See **Getting the Services You Need** (page 288).

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the seat airbag supplemental restraint systems, its fuses or the seat cover on a vehicle containing seat airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING: If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected as soon as possible. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided to occupants in certain side impact crashes.



E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS


Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 53).

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

DRIVER AND PASSENGER KNEE AIRBAGS

WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

WARNING: Close the glove box door when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the passenger knee airbag and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

A driver knee airbag is located under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is located within or under the glove box door. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy but the driver front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.


Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 53).

SAFETY CANOPY™

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

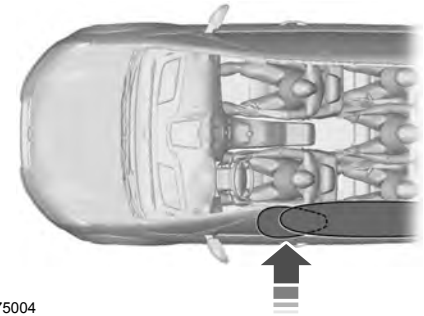
DEP DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 53).

Always properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING: Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags and the Safety Canopy. Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after you switch the ignition on.
- The readiness light either flashes or stays lit.
- A series of five beeps is heard. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The restraint system is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains conditions sufficient to cause the restraint control module to deploy a safety device.

DEALER ePROCESS

The fact that not all the safety devices activate for all occupants in a crash does not mean something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, type of crash, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.
- The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The side airbags are designed to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.
- The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Licence exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m). Vehicles equipped with the remote start feature have a greater range.

One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you cannot use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control operates if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorizes your vehicle to unlock when one of the following conditions are met:

- You activate the front exterior door handle switch.
- You press the luggage compartment button.
- You press a button on the remote control.

If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area, or if the remote control battery is low, you may need to mechanically unlock your door. You can use the mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key to open the driver door in this situation. See **Remote Control** (page 55).

REMOTE CONTROL

Intelligent Access Key

Note: *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E218688

The remote control operates the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

Removable Key Blade

The remote control also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E218689

Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



E151795

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Refer to local regulations when disposing of remote control batteries.*

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.*

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **General Information** (page 112).

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery.



E218689

1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



E218690

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



E218691

3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the remote control and install the key blade.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Car Finder

Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Sounding the Panic Alarm

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to deactivate.

Remote Start

WARNING: To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or in areas that are not well ventilated.

Note: *Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.*

The remote start button is on the remote control.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from outside the vehicle. The remote control has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when the vehicle is remote started. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 138).

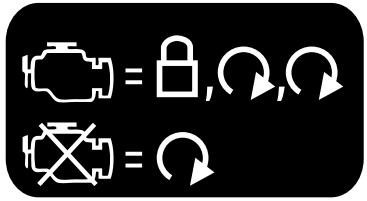
Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

The remote start system does not work if:

- The ignition is on.
- The alarm system is triggered.
- You switch off the feature in the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- The vehicle battery voltage is too low.
- The service engine soon light is on.

Remote Starting Your Vehicle

Note: *You must press each button within three seconds of each other. If you do not follow this sequence, your vehicle does not start remotely, the direction indicators do not flash twice and the horn does not sound.*



E138626

To remote start your vehicle:

1. Press the lock button.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The exterior lamps flash twice.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start. See **General Information** (page 112).

DEALER ePROCESS

The power windows do not work during remote starting and the radio does not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps remain on and the vehicle will run for 5, 10, or 15 minutes, depending on the setting. See **General Information** (page 112).

Extending the Vehicle Run Time

To extend the engine running time duration of your vehicle during remote start, repeat steps 1 and 2 while the engine is running. If you programmed the duration to last 10 minutes, the second 10 minutes will begin after what is left of the first activation time. For example, if your vehicle had been running from the first remote start for 5 minutes, your vehicle continues to run now for a total of 20 minutes. You can extend the remote start up to a maximum of 35 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after the engine stops running.

Turning the Vehicle Off After Remote Starting



Press the button once. The parking lamps turn off.

You may have to be closer to your vehicle to remotely switch off your vehicle after remote starting. This is due to the added noise of your running vehicle.

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).

Remote Control Feedback

An LED on the remote control provides status feedback of remote start or stop commands.

LED	Status
Solid green	Remote start or extension successful
Solid red	Remote stop successful; engine off
Blinking red	Remote start or stop failed
Blinking green	Waiting for status update from vehicle

Memory Feature

You can program your remote control to recall memory positions. See **Memory Function** (page 149).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 78).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that remain unprogrammed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information by using the information display to determine:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle traveled with a MyKey.

Note: *Switch the vehicle on to use the system.*

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Note: *For vehicles equipped with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin remote transmitter are present, the admin remote transmitter will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the vehicle on to start the vehicle.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Safety belt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the driver and front seat passengers' safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel or charge. The low-fuel or low charge warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel or recharge.
- Restricted touchscreen operation in some markets. For example, MyKey may prevent manual navigation destination input while the vehicle is in any gear other than park (P) or when the vehicle reaches a certain rate of speed.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions, if equipped on your vehicle.

Note: *Audio system may not mute on vehicles equipped with a basic AM/FM radio.*

Note: *You may be able to turn the lane departure warning feature off, but feature will automatically re-activate with every new key cycle.*

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

Note: *Available vehicle features will appear in your information display, providing choices to switch them on or off, or to select a more specific setting.*

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

WARNING: Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to switch off AdvanceTrac™ or traction control, 911 Assist or Emergency Assistance, or the do not disturb feature (if your vehicle is equipped with these features).

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the remote control into the backup slot. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 78).
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. From the MyKey menu select the option Create MyKey. See **Information Displays** (page 112).
4. When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The programmed restrictions apply when you key off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or transmitter.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming and Changing Configurable Settings**.

DEALER ePROCESS

Programming and Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or transmitter you want to program.
2. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. See **Information Displays** (page 112).
3. Follow the instructions in the display. The programmed restrictions apply when you switch the vehicle off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or transmitter.

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings. When you make any changes to your MyKey settings, you change the settings for every MyKey. You cannot make individual changes to apply to certain MyKeys.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status at once. To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, use the information display.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to begin clearing your MyKey programming. See **Information Displays** (page 112).
3. Follow the instructions in the display.
4. A confirmation message appears in the display after you finish clearing your MyKeys.

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status. You cannot remove the MyKey restrictions individually.*

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 112).

MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Lincoln-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Lincoln-approved remote start system.

MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. Vehicles with keyless start: Make sure you place the transmitter into the backup slot. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 78). The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key. The passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.
I cannot program the configurable settings.	The transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. There are no MyKeys programmed to the vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key or transmitter from an authorized dealer.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Condition	Potential Causes
I lost a key.	Program a spare key or transmitter. You may need to see an authorized dealer. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 78).
The MyKey distance does not accumulate.	The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. The key system has been reset.
No MyKey functions with the transmitter.	An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).

DEALER ePROCESS

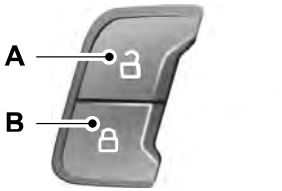
Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E138628

A Unlock.
B Lock.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on each door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch no longer operates after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control or keyless keypad, or switch the ignition on, to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).

Rear Door Unlocking and Opening

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time. The liftgate release button only operates when your vehicle's speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: *If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.*

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all doors unlock mode. The direction indicators flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver door unlock mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door unlock mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access. You can also change between the unlocking modes using the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, a tone sounds and the direction indicators will flash if all the doors and the liftgate are closed.

Note: *If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.*

Mislock

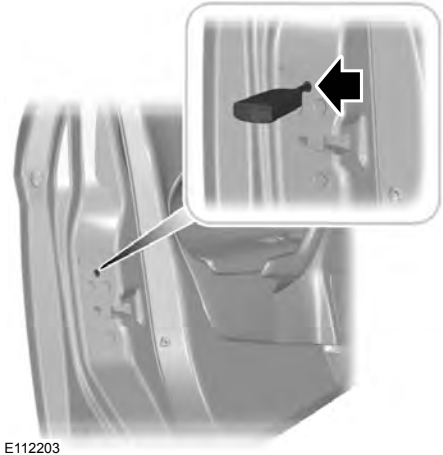
If any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, a tone sounds and the direction indicators do not flash. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).

Opening the Liftgate

Press twice within three seconds to open the liftgate.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Locking the Doors



E112203

If the central locking function does not operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.*

Activating Intelligent Access

General Information

You can unlock and lock the vehicle without taking the keys out of your pocket or purse when your intelligent access key is within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle. Intelligent access uses a sensor on the back of the door handle for unlocking and a separate sensor on the face of each door handle for locking.

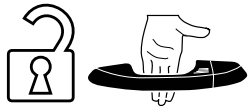
The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle. See* ***Remote Control*** *(page 55).*

Unlocking Using Intelligent Access



E248553

With your intelligent access key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful to not touch the lock sensor at the same time or pulling the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your intelligent access key fob.

Locking Using Intelligent Access

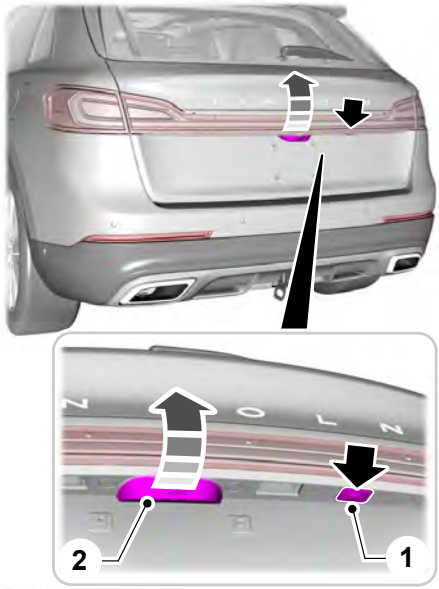


E248554

With your intelligent access key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful to not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

DEALER ePROCESS

Opening the Liftgate



E201200

1. Press the button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Pull the liftgate upward.

Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys

This helps to prevent you from locking your key inside the passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you electronically lock your vehicle with any door open, transmission in park (P) and the ignition off, the system searches for an intelligent access key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system finds a key, all of the doors immediately unlock and a tone sounds, indicating that a key is inside.

You can override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside your vehicle. To do this, lock your vehicle after you have closed all the doors by:

- Using the keyless entry keypad.
- Pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key.
- Touching the locking area on the handle with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if:

- The ignition is on.
- The ignition is off and the transmission is not in park (P).

Auto Relock

If you press the unlock button on the remote control and do not open a door within 45 seconds, your vehicle locks and the alarm arms. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).

Autolock

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle's speed is greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Autolock repeats when:

- You open then close any door while the ignition is on and your vehicle's speed is less than 9 mph (15 km/h).
- Your vehicle's speed is greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Enabling or Disabling

To enable or disable the autolock feature, contact an authorized dealer.

Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- You stop your vehicle and switch the ignition off or to accessory.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *The doors do not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.*

Enabling or Disabling

You can enable or disable the autounlock feature in the information display or an authorized dealer can do it for you. See **General Information** (page 112).

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote control.

The lamps turn off if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- 25 seconds have elapsed.

The lamps do not turn off if:

- You turn them on with the lamp control.
- Any door is open.

Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds have elapsed.
- You press the push button ignition switch.

Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps, interior lamps or headlamps on, the battery saver shuts them off 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys

If you leave the ignition switched on, it shuts off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after 45 minutes.

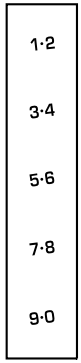
KEYLESS ENTRY

SECURICODE™ Keyless Entry Keypad

The keypad is near the driver window. It illuminates when touched.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *If you enter your entry code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Enter your entry code again more slowly.*



E138637

You can use the keypad to do the following:

- Lock or unlock the doors.
- Program and erase user codes.
- Arm and disarm the anti-theft alarm.

You can operate the keypad with the factory-set five-digit entry code. The code is on the owner's manual wallet card in the glove box and is available from an authorized dealer. You can also program up to five of your own five-digit personal entry codes.

Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.
2. Press **1·2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must do this within five seconds of completing step 2.
4. Press **1·2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat steps 1 through 3, then for step 4:

- Press **3·4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5·6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7·8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9·0** to save personal code 5.

For vehicles with SYNC 3, you can also program the system with a personal entry code. See **Settings** (page 481).

Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory-set code works even if you have set your own personal code.

Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.
2. Press and release **1·2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1·2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the factory-set five-digit code works.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

The anti-scan feature turns off after:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition on.
- You unlock your vehicle using intelligent access.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Locking All Doors

Press and hold **7·8** and **9·0** simultaneously with the driver door closed. You do not need to enter the keypad code first.

Unlocking the Driver Door

Enter the factory-set or your personal five-digit code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps illuminate.

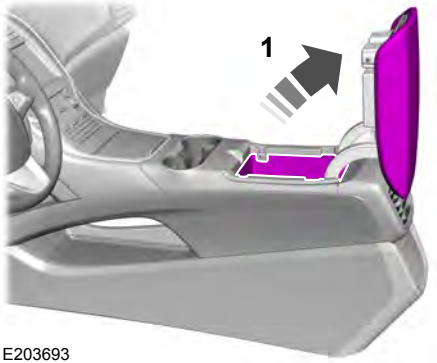
Note: *All doors unlock if you switch on the all-door unlocking mode. See* ***Locking and Unlocking*** *(page 66).*

Unlocking All Doors

Enter the factory-set or your personal five-digit code, then press **3·4** within five seconds.

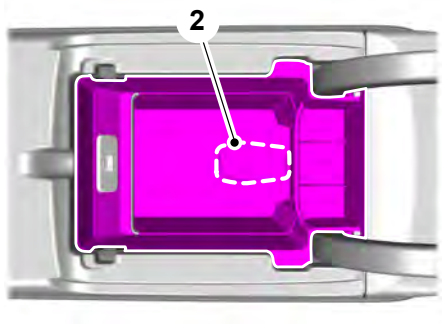
Displaying the Factory-Set Code

Note: *You need to have two programmed intelligent access keys for this procedure.*



E203693

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.



E203694

2. With the buttons facing up and the unlock button facing the front of your vehicle, place the first intelligent access key onto the back up slot inside the center console.
3. Press the push button ignition switch once and wait a few seconds.
4. Press the push button ignition switch again and remove the key.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

5. Place the second programmed key onto the backup slot, then press the push button ignition switch.

The factory-set code appears in the information display for a few seconds.

Note: *The code may not display until after any other warning messages first display.*

DEALER ePROCESS

POWER LIFTGATE

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

The liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

Three warning tones sound as the liftgate begins to power close. If there is a problem with the open or close request, one of the following may occur:

- A tone sounds if the ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- A tone sounds if the battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- A tone sounds if the liftgate is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the liftgate closes under control. A repetitive tone sounds and the liftgate closes under control. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Note: *Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

From the Instrument Panel

With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

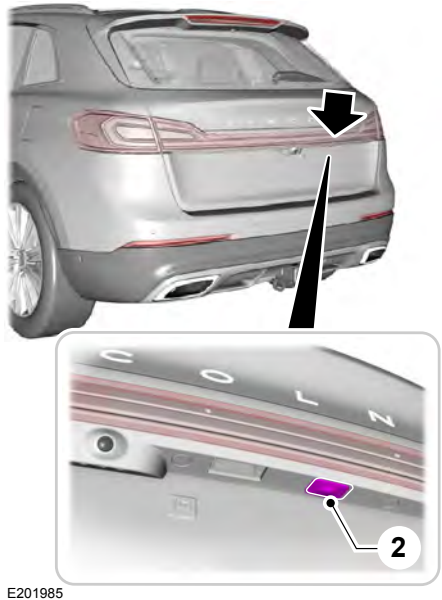
Remote Control

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Outside Control Button

Opening the Liftgate

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If a passive key is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



E201985

2. Press the liftgate release button.

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.*

Closing the Liftgate

WARNING: Keep clear of the liftgate when using the rear switch.



E138636

Press and release the liftgate control button.

Stopping the Liftgate Movement

Note: *Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.*

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

This method only works for vehicles with the hands-free liftgate feature.

Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: *Once the liftgate has stopped moving, you can also manually move it to the desired height.*

3. Press and hold the liftgate control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

Note: *You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.*

Note: *You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.*

The new open liftgate height is recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

Note: *The system recalls the new programmed height, even if you disconnect the battery.*

When operating the power liftgate after you have programmed a lower height than fully open, you can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

DEALER ePROCESS

Obstacle Detection

When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: *Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.*

When Opening

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

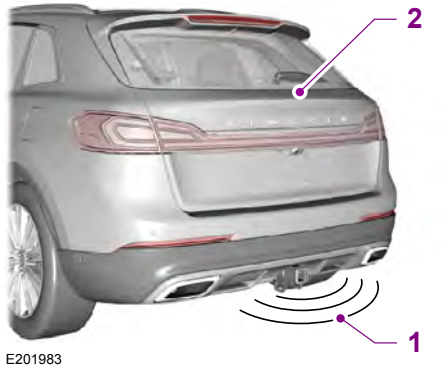
Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off

You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings in your information display.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

Hands-Free Feature (If Equipped)

Make sure you have an intelligent access transmitter within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.



E201983

1. Move your foot under and away from the rear bumper detection area in a single-kick motion. Do not move your foot sideways or the sensors may not detect the motion. Kick between the exhaust and hitch if your vehicle has a hitch.
2. The liftgate will power open or close.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.*

Note: *Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the intelligent access key away from the rear bumper detection area when washing your vehicle.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in engine starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key when starting your vehicle. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart your vehicle if a problem occurs.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

SecuriLock™

The system helps prevent the engine from starting unless you use a coded key programmed to your vehicle. Using the wrong key may prevent your vehicle from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a coded key, it is not operating correctly. A message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

The system arms when you switch the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

The system disarms when you switch the ignition on with a coded key.

Replacement Keys

Note: *Your vehicle comes with two keys.*

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and turns on the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your coded keys are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys. Contact an authorized dealer.

Store a spare intelligent access key away from your vehicle in a safe place. You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer.

Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

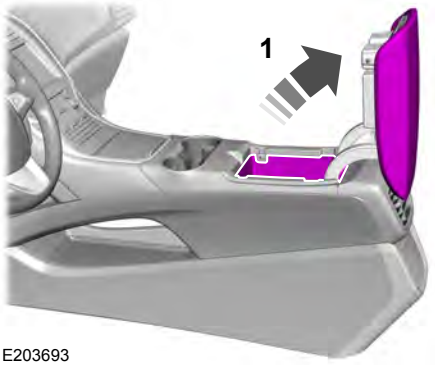
Note: *You can program a maximum of four intelligent access keys to your vehicle.*

You must have two previously programmed intelligent access keys inside your vehicle and the new unprogrammed intelligent access keys readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

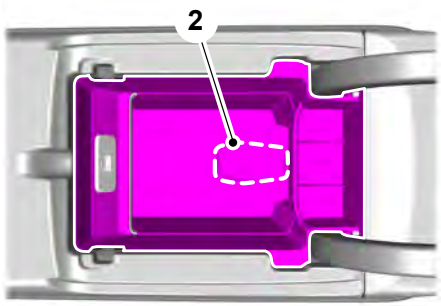
Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you carry out any steps out of sequence.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.



E203693

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.



E203694

2. With the buttons facing up and the unlock button facing the front of your vehicle, place the first intelligent access key onto the back up slot inside the center console.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.
4. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
5. Remove the intelligent access key.
6. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed intelligent access key onto the backup slot and press the push button ignition switch.
7. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
8. Remove the intelligent access key.
9. Wait five seconds, then place the unprogrammed intelligent access key onto the backup slot and press the push button ignition switch.
10. Once complete, the information cluster displays a message confirming that you have programed the key.

If programming was unsuccessful, wait 10 seconds and repeat the procedure. If it still does not work, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in your vehicle. Electronically lock your vehicle to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver door to unlock your vehicle, then switch your vehicle on within 12 seconds.

Note: *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: POWER ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 142).*



E261582

Use the control on the side of the steering column to adjust the position.

To adjust:

- Tilt: Press the top or bottom of the control.
- Telescope: Press the front or rear of the control.

End of Travel Position

The steering column sets a stopping position just short of the end of the column position to prevent damage to the steering column. A new stopping position sets if the steering column encounters an object when tilting or telescoping.

To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Confirm there is nothing obstructing the motion of the steering column.
2. Press and hold the steering column control until the steering column stops moving.
3. Press the steering column control again.

Note: *The steering column may begin to move again.*

4. When the steering column stops, continue holding the control for a few seconds.
5. Repeat for each direction as necessary.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

A new stopping position sets. The next time you tilt or telescope the steering column, it stops just short of the end of the column position.

Memory Feature (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the steering column position with the memory function. See **General Information** (page 112).

Pressing the adjustment control during a memory recall cancels the operation.

Easy Entry and Exit Feature

The column moves up when you switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition on to return the system to its previous settings. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 112).

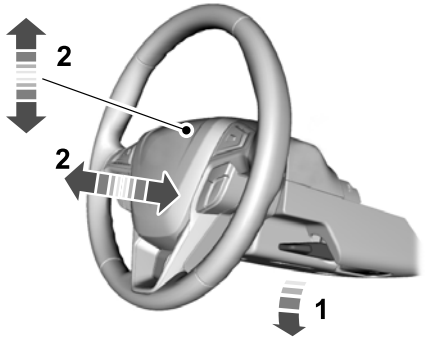
Note: *If you press any adjustment or memory button when in easy exit mode, the system cancels the operation.*

Note: *Depending on your vehicle, the column may move up and in.*

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 142).*



E259854

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



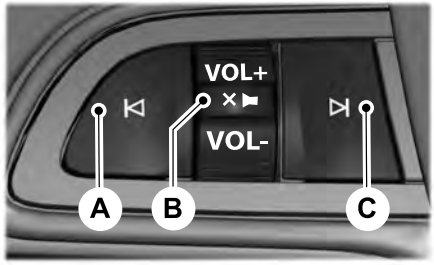
E259855

3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

You can operate the following functions with the control:

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E221073

A Seek down or previous.

B Volume up or down and mute.

C Seek up or next.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Press and release to activate voice recognition.

CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise Control



E221071

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 229).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Adaptive Cruise Control



E266201

See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 230).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E221074



E251877

See **Information Displays** (page 112).

Note: *The **HUD** button replaces the **DISP** button on vehicles that have a head up display (HUD).*

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (IF EQUIPPED)

Switch the heated steering wheel on and off using the touchscreen.



Touch the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

Note: *You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.*

Note: *The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.*

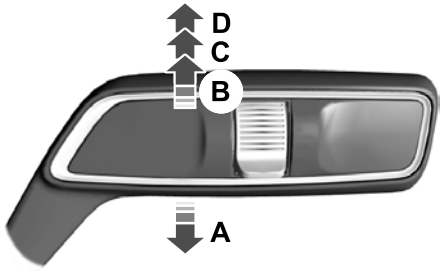
Note: *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wiper.



E269410

A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

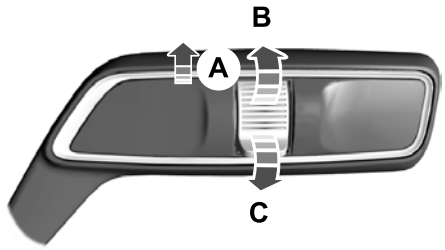
Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

Intermittent Wipe



E269411

A Intermittent wipe
B Shortest wipe interval.
C Longest wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

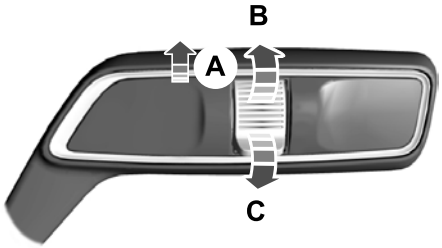
Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.



E269411

A Autowipers On.
B High sensitivity.
C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch autowipers off.

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

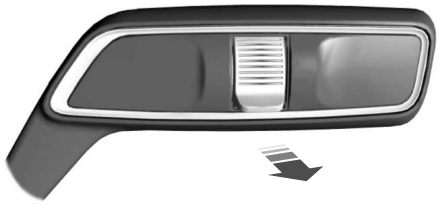
Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

Autowipers Settings

Autowipers defaults to on and remains on until you switch it off in the information display. When you switch off autowipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E269412

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers.

When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. When activated, a courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

Note: *You can switch courtesy wipe on or off in the information display. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 118).*

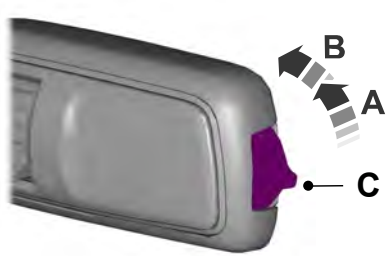
Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.*

Front Camera Washer (If Equipped)

Operating the windshield washer also turns on the front camera washer.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper



E242324

A Intermittent wipe.

B Continuous wipe.

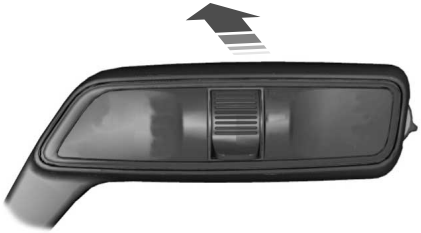
C Rear window wiper off.

Depending on your vehicle, when you switch on the front wipers and move the gearshift lever to reverse (R), the rear intermittent wipe may turn on.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Make sure you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.*

Rear Window Washer



E269727

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Rear Camera Washer (If Equipped)

Switching on the rear washer also turns on the rear camera washer.

DEALER ePROCESS

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

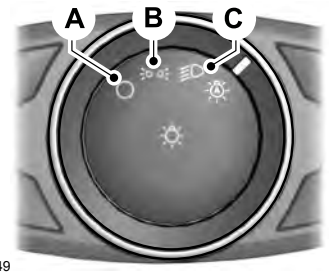
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL

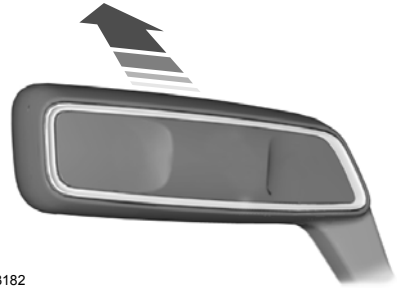


E142449

A	Lamps off.
B	Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
C	Headlamp low beam.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Headlamp High Beam

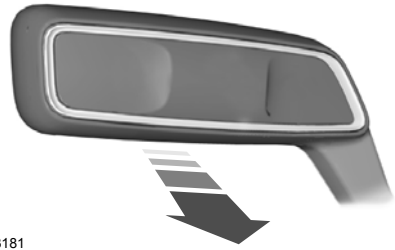


E273182

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever away from you again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beam off.

Flashing the Headlamp High Beam

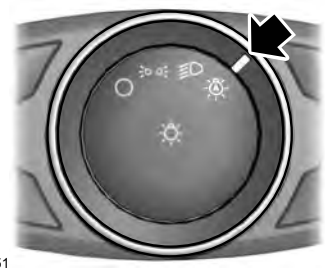


E273181

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps turn on in low light situations, or when the wipers turn on.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

Note: *If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers:

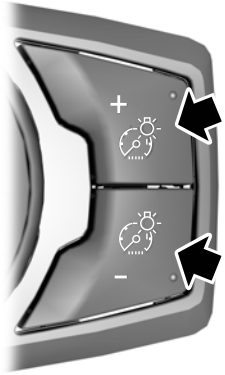
- During a single wipe.
- When using the windshield washers.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Note: *If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: *When disconnecting the battery or when it runs out of charge, the illuminated components turn to the maximum setting.*

Vehicles With Front Fog Lamps



E231828

Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

Vehicles Without Front Fog Lamps



E165366

A Press repeatedly or press and hold to dim.

B Press repeatedly or press and hold to brighten.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Type One - Conventional (Non-Configurable)

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. Switching the ignition on.
2. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions, or releasing the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
3. The lighting control is in the off, parking lamp or autolamps positions.
4. The headlamps are off.

Type Two - Configurable

Switch the daytime running lamps on or off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 112).

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. The lamps are on in the information display.
2. Switching the ignition on.
3. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions, or releasing the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
4. The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
5. The headlamps are off.

The other lighting control switch positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

If the daytime running lamps are off in the information display, the lamps stay off in all switch positions.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

The system turns on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns off high beams before they can distract other road users. Low beams remain on.

Note: *The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction or damage.*

Note: *The system may not operate properly in cold or inclement conditions. You can switch on the high beams by overriding the system.*

Note: *If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system goes into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may appear in the information display if the camera is blocked.*

Note: *Using much larger tires or equipping vehicle accessories such as snowplows can modify your vehicle's ride height and degrade automatic high beam control performance.*

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active, the high beams turn on if:

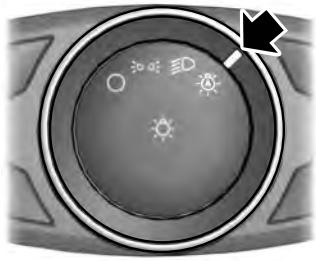
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 32 mph (51 km/h).

The system turns the high beams off if:

- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 27 mph (44 km/h).
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The camera is blocked.

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 112).



E142451

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 91).

Overriding the System

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Automatic High Beam Indicator

The indicator illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

FRONT FOG LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)



E142453

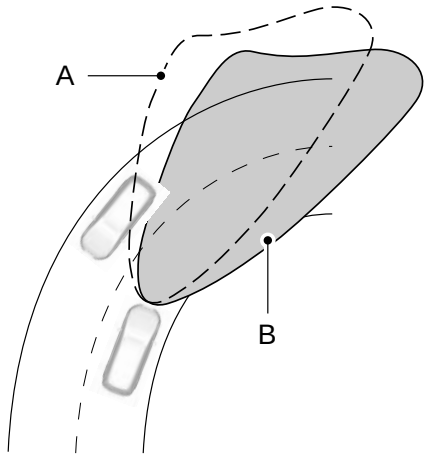
Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except Off and the high beams are not on.

ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

The headlamp beams move in the same direction as the steering wheel. This provides more visibility when driving around curves.

A. Without adaptive headlamps.
B. With adaptive headlamps.



E161714

The system only works with the lighting control in the autolamp position. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display.

Note: *There is a delay of two to five seconds before the system operates when you drive your vehicle.*

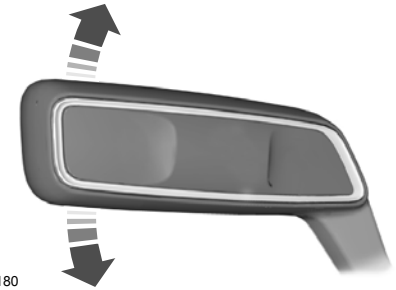
Note: *The system is only active at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h).*

System Check (If Equipped)

The system has a power-up movement check feature. When you start your vehicle, the lamps track left to right, then back to center to alert the driver that the system is working properly.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E273180

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Indicating a Lane Change

Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

WELCOME LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

The Lincoln welcome mat projection lights are on the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. They project an image onto the ground a short distance from your vehicle when welcome lighting or lighted entry turns on.

For auto-fold mirrors, the Lincoln welcome mat turns on when welcome lighting or lighted entry turns on and the mirrors fold in upon locking or using the switch on the door.

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display.

Note: *Moisture, frost and ice build-up or other types of contamination on the surface of the light lens can cause non-permanent distortion or reduced brightness of the image. Do not use abrasive materials to clean the lens.*

Note: *If you enable auto-fold and then you fold the mirrors in to the door window glass, the welcome mats do not turn on.*

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press the all lamps on button on the overhead console.

Front Interior Lamp



E262162

The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console.

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The position and availability of each button on the overhead console depends on your vehicle.*

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On

Press to switch all interior lamps on.

Note: *For vehicles without a lamps off switch, press again to switch all interior lamps off.*

Switching All of the Interior Lamps Off

(If Equipped)

Press to switch all interior lamps off.

Switching the Individual Map Lamps On and Off

Press to switch the left-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

Press to switch the right-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

Interior Lamp Function

Press to switch the interior lamp function on and off.

When the interior lamp function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps stay off.

When the interior lamp function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps turn on.

Note: *The indicator lamp lights amber when the door function is off.*

Rear Interior Lamps

The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.

Press to switch the lamps on or off.

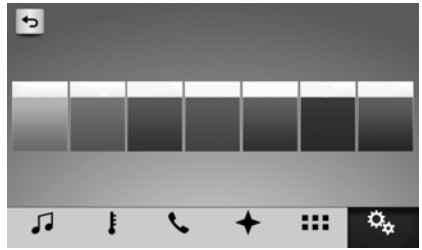
Note: *If the rear lamps are switched on through the overhead console, you cannot turn them off with the rear lamp switch.*

AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

Use the touchscreen to select the following:

Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select ambient lighting.



E273192

Switching Ambient Lighting On

Touch a color once.

Changing the Color

Touch any color once.

DEALER ePROCESS

Adjusting the Brightness

Drag the selected color up or down.

Switching Ambient Lighting Off

Touch the selected color once or drag the selected color down to zero brightness.

DEALER ePROCESS

POWER WINDOWS

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E146043

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Up

Start the engine.

1. Lift and hold the window switch until the you fully close the door window. Continue to hold the switch for a few seconds after you close the window.
2. Release the window switch.
3. Press and hold the window switch until you fully open the door window.
4. Release the window switch.
5. Lift and hold the window switch until you fully close the window.
6. Test for correct window operation by carrying out the one-touch down and one-touch up features.

Bounce-Back

The window will stop automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING: When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Window Lock



E144072

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Note: *You can enable or disable this feature in the information display or see an authorized dealer. See* ***General Information*** *(page 112).*

Note: *To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.*

Opening the Windows

You can only open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

Closing the Windows

WARNING: When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

To close the windows, press and hold the remote control lock button. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

DEALER ePROCESS



E144073

A Left-hand mirror.

B Adjustment control.

C Right-hand mirror.

To adjust your mirrors, switch your vehicle on (with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running) and then:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control lights.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

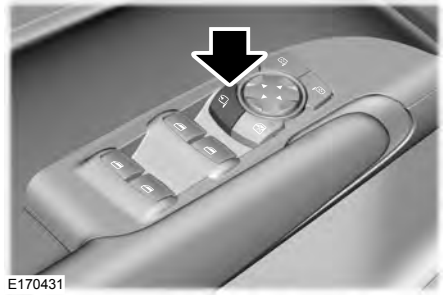
Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Auto-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)

The exterior mirrors automatically fold in toward the glass after you place the transmission into park (P), turn off the vehicle, open and close the driver's side door and lock the vehicle. The exterior mirrors automatically unfold and return to their driving position after you unlock the vehicle and open and close the driver's side door.

You can switch this feature on and off through the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).

Note: *If you switch this feature off through the information display, the welcome lighting also switches off.*



E170431

You can fold the mirrors on demand by pressing the power-folding mirror control on the door. The control lights and the mirrors fold in toward the glass. Press the control again to unfold the mirrors. The control light turns off.

Note: *If you switch the auto fold feature on and use the power-folding control to fold the mirrors on demand, you must use the control again to unfold them.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Loose Mirror

If you manually fold the power-folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Heated Exterior Mirrors** (page 140).

Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 149).

Auto-dimming Feature

The driver exterior mirror automatically dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

Signal Indicator Mirrors

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you activate the direction indicator.

Lincoln Welcome Mat

Projection lights, on the bottom of the mirror housings, project an image onto the ground a short distance from the vehicle. See **Lighting** (page 90).

Blind Spot Information System

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 248).

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

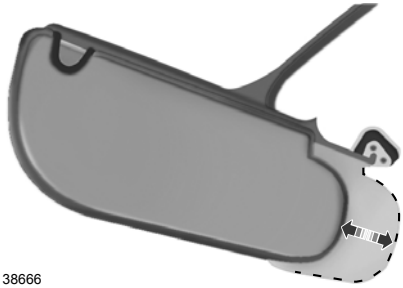
Auto-Dimming Mirror

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

DEALER ePROCESS

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

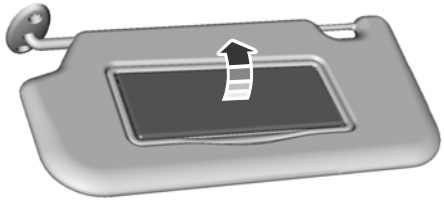
SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

MOONROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

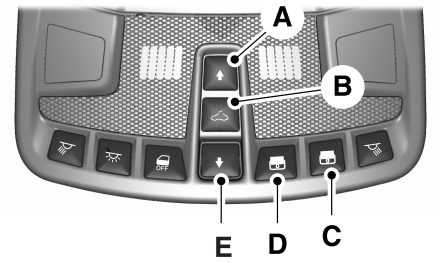
WARNING: When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

Note: *With the panoramic moonroof panel fully open and vehicle speed increasing to approximately 50 mph (80 km/h), the moonroof opening panel automatically closes approximately 8 in (20 cm) to reduce excessive wind noise at higher speeds. This feature only functions one time per key cycle, so you can open the glass further if desired.*

The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console and have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop its movement during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E191272

A	**Moonroof open.**
B	**Moonroof vent.**
C	**Sunshade open.**
D	**Sunshade close.**
E	**Moonroof close.**

Moonroof Open

Press and release to open the moonroof. The moonroof opens to the fully open position. When vehicle speed increases higher than 50 mph (80 km/h), the moonroof panel automatically closes to the comfort stop position to reduce excessive wind noise. Once you reduce vehicle speed, press and release the control again to return to the fully open position.

Moonroof Vent

Press and release to vent the moonroof.

Sunshade Open

Press and release to open the sunshade. The sunshade opens automatically with the moonroof. You can also open the sunshade with the moonroof closed.

Note: *The sunshade stops short of its fully opened position for the comfort of rear passengers. To open the sunshade fully, press the control again.*

Sunshade Close

Press and release to close the sunshade. If fully open, the sunshade stops after covering the rear glass panel. Press and release again to fully close the sunshade.

Moonroof Close

Press and release to close the moonroof from either the open or vent positions.

Bounce-Back

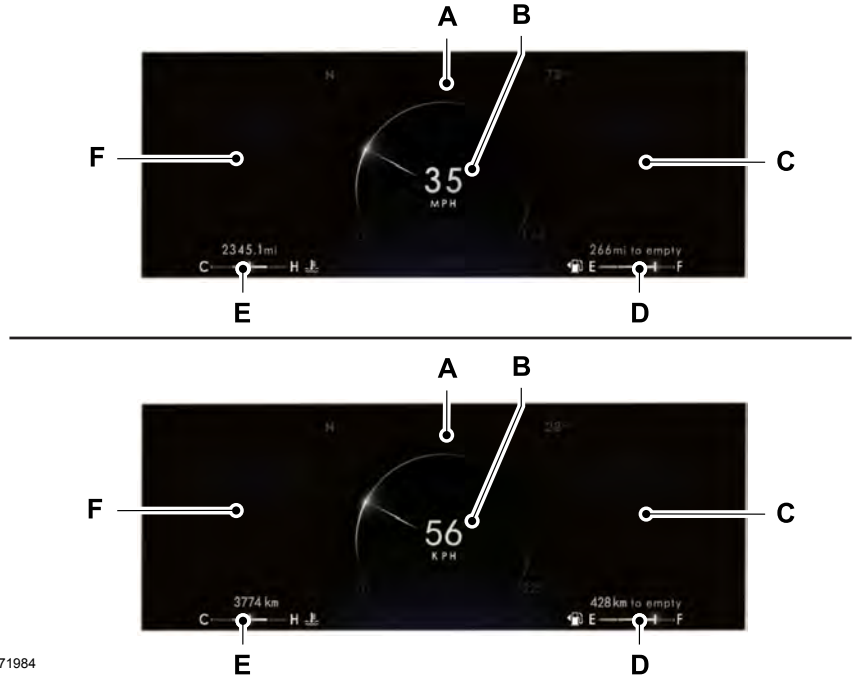
The moonroof automatically reverses some distance if an obstacle is detected while closing.

To override this feature, press and hold the **moonroof close** control within two seconds after the roof comes to a stop following a bounce-back reversal or two successive reversals if equipped with a retractable panoramic roof.

DEALER ePROCESS

GAUGES

Note: *Clusters shown in single gauge view.*



DEALER ePROCESS

A Status Bar.
B Speedometer.
C Right Information Group.
D Fuel Gauge.
E Coolant Gauge.
F Left Information Group.

Status Bar

Displays information related to the current audio source, compass direction and outside air temperature.

Left and Right Information Group

Information that appears depends on current gauge view and on-demand settings. See **General Information** (page 112).

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 75 mi (120 km) to empty for MyKey, and at 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km) for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

It illuminates white when the system is in standby mode. It illuminates green when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 230).

Adaptive Steering (If Equipped)



The adaptive steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

Adaptive Steering Initialization (yellow, flashing): The adaptive steering system has detected a difference between steering wheel angle and the desired road wheel angle. The steering wheel adjusts itself to correct this difference. This adjustment is part of normal system operation.

Adaptive Steering Off (yellow, solid): The adaptive steering system is off. It is possible that the steering wheel may not be straight when the vehicle is driving straight ahead. If this message persists, see an authorized dealer.

Adaptive Steering Loss (red, solid): The adaptive steering system integrity cannot be verified. Do not drive the vehicle and contact an authorized dealer immediately. See **Steering** (page 254).

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold Active



It illuminates when the system holds your vehicle stationary.

Auto Hold Unavailable



It illuminates when the system is on, but unavailable to hold your vehicle stationary.

Automatic High Beam Control (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the system automatically turns the headlamp high beam on.

See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 93).

Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 248).

Brake System Warning Lamp

WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Note: *Indicators vary depending on region.*

This lamp is a dual function lamp and will illuminate when:

- You apply the parking brake with the ignition on.
- Your vehicle has a brake fault or low brake fluid level, regardless of parking brake position.

DEALER ePROCESS



If the lamp illuminates when you are moving, you may have the parking brake applied. Make sure the parking brake is off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if the lamp continues to illuminate.

Cruise Control Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 229).

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

Door Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Electric Park Brake



It illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake has a malfunction. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 201).

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fasten Rear Seatbelt (If Equipped)



Illuminates and a chime sounds to signal the rear seatbelts are not buckled.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

Hill Start Assist (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the system is active.

Hood Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Liftgate Ajar



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Low Beam Malfunction Warning



It will illuminate when there is a malfunction with the low beam headlamp bulb.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 321).

Parking Lamps



It illuminates when you switch the parking lamps on.

Powertrain Fault



Illuminates when the system detects a powertrain or an AWD fault. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Service Engine Soon



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether your vehicle is ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, it illuminates until the engine is cranked and automatically turns off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds it flashes eight times, this indicates that your vehicle is not ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing.

See **Catalytic Converter** (page 185).

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Using Stability Control** (page 208). See **Using Traction Control** (page 206).

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Keyless Warning Alert

The horn will sound twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key and your vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on and open the driver door with the vehicle off.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the quick action menu (QAM) buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

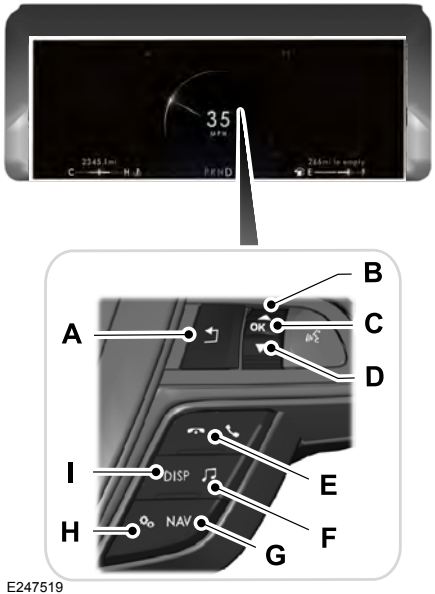
Note: *Some MyKey menu options only appear if MyKey is enabled and at least one MyKey is programmed.*



This icon gives you the ability to switch a feature on or off. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

DEALER ePROCESS

Information Display Controls



E247519

A Back Button.
B Toggle Up.
C OK Button.
D Toggle Down.
E Phone QAM Buttons.
F Audio QAM Button.
G Navigation QAM Button.
H Settings QAM Button.
I Display QAM Button.

Note: *The **NAV** button is replaced with a compass button on vehicles without navigation.*

- Press one of the QAM buttons to enter a menu.
- Toggle **(B)** and **(D)** to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press **(C)** to enter a sub-menu.
- Press **(A)** to exit a menu.
- Press the open menu's QAM button at any time to close the menu (escape button).
- Press **(C)** to choose and confirm settings or messages.

DEALER ePROCESS

Settings

Settings			
Traction Control			
Drive Control	Handling in D	Enter the submenu and select your setting	
	Handling in S		
	Performance in S		
Adaptive Steering	Steering in D	Enter the submenu and select your setting	
	Steering in S		
	System		
Driver Assistance	Blindspot		
	Cross Traffic Alert		
	Cruise Control	Enter the submenu and select your setting	
	Driver Alert		
	Lane Keeping System	Mode	Enter the submenu and select your setting
		Intensity	
		Sensitivity	
	Pre-Collision	Alert Sensitivity	

DEALER ePROCESS

Settings		
		Distance Indication
		Active Braking
		Evasive Steering
	Rear Park Aid	
	Trailer Sway	
Speedometer km/h		
Speedometer MPH		
Vehicle	Lighting	Enter the submenu and select your setting
	Oil Life Reset	Follow onscreen directions to confirm or modify your settings.
	Wipers	Enter the submenu and select your setting
	Alarm	
	Auto Engine Off	
	Easy Entry/Exit	
	Locks	Enter the submenu and select your setting
	Mirrors	
	Neutral Tow	

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Settings		
	Power Liftgate	
	Remote Start	
	Silent Mode	
	Tire Mobility Kit	Enter the submenu and select your setting
	Tire Monitor	Follow onscreen directions to confirm or modify your settings.
	Windows	Enter the submenu and select your setting
MyKey	MyKey Status	Follow onscreen directions to confirm or modify your settings.
	Create MyKey	
	911 Assist	Enter the submenu and select your setting
	Do Not Disturb	
	Traction Control	
	Max Speed	
	Speed Minder	
	Volume Limiter	
	Clear MyKeys	Follow onscreen directions to confirm or modify your settings.

DEALER ePROCESS

Display

Display		
Gauges	Enter the submenu and select your setting	
Info/Trip/Fuel	No Content	
	Trip 1	
	Trip 2	
	Fuel Economy	
	Eco Behavior	
	Auto StartStop	
	Tire Pressure	
	Power Distribution	
	Seatbelts	
Display Setup	Distance	Enter the submenu and select your setting
	Temperature	

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Display		
	Tire Pressure	
	Language	

- ***Trip 1*** - Displays distance traveled, average fuel economy, and time spent for trip. Press and hold ***OK*** to reset.
  - ***Trip 2*** information is the same as ***Trip 1***.
- ***Fuel Economy*** - Displays instantaneous and average fuel economy.
- **Eco Behavior** - Displays information about your Acceleration, Deceleration and speed.
- **Auto StartStop** - Displays engine information.
- ***Tire Pressure*** - Displays a graphic of current vehicle tire pressures.
- **Power Distribution** (if equipped) - Displays a graphic of the power distribution between the front and rear wheels.
- **Seatbelts** - Displays the buckle status for the rear seats.

Phone

See **General Information** (page 415).

Audio

See **General Information** (page 415).

Navigation (If Equipped)

See **General Information** (page 415).

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of these messages may be available and certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened.*



E222314

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Press the ***OK*** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

Active Park

Message	Action
Active Park Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 230).
Front Sensor Not Aligned	
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Conditions exist such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 230).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 230).

DEALER ePROCESS

Message	Action
Normal Cruise Active Automatic Braking Turned Off	Displayed when the automatic braking has been disabled.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displayed when the adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.

Adaptive Headlamps

Message	Action
Check Headlamp System See Manual	Displays when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

DEALER ePROCESS

Adaptive Steering

Message	Action
Adaptive Steering Initialization	The adaptive steering system detects a difference between steering wheel angle and the desired road wheel angle. The steering wheel adjusts itself to correct this difference. This adjustment is part of normal system operation.
Adaptive Steering Fault Service Required	The adaptive steering system is off. It is possible that the steering wheel may not be straight when you drive the vehicle straight ahead. If this message persists, see an authorized dealer.
Adaptive Steering Loss Do Not Drive	The adaptive steering system integrity cannot be verified. Do not drive the vehicle and contact an authorized dealer immediately.

Airbag

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	Objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	The alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 80).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Action
Vehicle Shuts Off In {seconds:#0} Seconds	The engine is getting ready to shut off.
Vehicle Shut Off to Save Energy	The engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Vehicle Shuts Off in {seconds:#0} Seconds Press Ok to Override	The engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

AWD

Message	Action
AWD OFF	Displays when the system automatically disables to protect itself. This may be caused by operating the vehicle with the compact tire installed, if the system is overheating or if there is an issue with another vehicle system preventing AWD operation. The system resumes normal operation and clears this message after cycling the ignition on and off and driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed, after the system is allowed to cool or after the other vehicle system issues are resolved.
AWD Malfunction Service Required	Displays in conjunction with the powertrain malfunction or reduced power light when the system is not operating properly. If the message stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Check Charging System	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Now	The charging system needs servicing. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Battery State of Charge Low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.
Turn Power Off To Save Battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Low Battery Features Temporarily Turned Off	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blindspot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The system sensors are blocked. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 248).
Vehicle Coming From X	The system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 248).
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 248).
Cross Traffic System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
X Door Ajar	The door listed is not completely closed.
Engine ON	The driver's door is opened, your vehicle is in park and the engine is on.
Hood Ajar	Displays when the hood is not completely closed.
Switches Inhibited Security Mode	Displays when the door switches have been disabled.
Child Lock Malfunction Service Required	There is a system malfunction with the child locks. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

DEALER ePROCESS

Message	Action
Child Lock ON	Indicates that the rear seat interior door release switches and power windows are switched off, preventing rear seat occupants from opening the doors or windows.
Child Lock OFF	Indicates that the rear seat interior door release switches and power windows are switched on.
Door Unlocked	Displays when the door lock turns off.
Doors Locked Unlock Before Opening	Displays when the door lock is turned on and you attempt to open the door.
Driver Door Fault Use Inside Override Lever In Map Pocket	Indicates a driver door fault that requires manually opening the door by the override lever. Contact an authorized dealer.
Door Fault Service Required	Indicates a fault with the electronic door system. Contact an authorized dealer.
Factory Keypad Code {X X X X X}	Displays the factory keypad code after the keypad has been reset. See **Keyless Entry** (page 70).

Driver Alert

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest soon.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 203).

Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	A reminder to press the brake while starting your vehicle.
No Key Detected	The system does not detect the key. See **Keyless Starting** (page 168).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	The Start Stop button is pressed to shut off the engine and an Intelligent Access key is not detected inside your vehicle.
Full Accessory Power Active	Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.

DEALER ePROCESS

Message	Action
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key Program Successful	During spare key programming, an intelligent access key is programmed to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	During spare key programming, the maximum number of keys have been programmed.
Key Program Failure	Displayed during spare key programming, when an intelligent access key has failed to be programmed.
Not Enough Keys Learned	Displayed during spare key programming when not enough keys have been programmed.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Vehicle Switched Off	Displays when the vehicle is switched off.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires the windshield to be cleaned to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests the driver to keep their hands on the steering wheel.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Low Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less.
Oil Change Required	The oil life left reaches 0%.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Message	Action
Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 328).
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Engine Coolant Over Temperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.
Washer Fluid Level Low	The washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled.
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Transport mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.
Factory Mode Contact Dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.
See Manual	Informs the driver that the powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Brake Applied Power Reduced	The brake system has reduced stopping power.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey not Created	MyKey cannot be programmed during key programming.
Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	When starting your vehicle, a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.
Near Vehicle Top Speed	When a MyKey is in use, the MyKey speed limit is on and your vehicle speed is approaching 81 mph (130 km/h).
MyKey Active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
Check Speed Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and seatbelt reminder is activated.
AdvanceTrac On - MyKey Setting	Displays when a MyKey is in use and AdvanceTrac is activated.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and park aid is activated.
Lane Keeping Alert On MyKey Setting	Displayed when the lane keeping aid is on per MyKey settings.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Front Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Front Parking Aid** (page 211).
Check Rear Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 211).

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Engaged	The parking brake is set, the engine is running and you drive your vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h). Release park brake before continued driving.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Message	Action
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Park Brake Maintenance Mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the rear brakes. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric park brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Contact your authorized dealer.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer.
Park Brake System Overheated	Numerous park brake applies have overheated the system. Wait 2 minutes before attempting to apply again.

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.

DEALER ePROCESS

Pre-Collision Assist

Message	Action
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Remote Start

Message	Action
To Drive: Press Brake and Gear Shift Button	Displays as a reminder to apply the brake and push the gear shift button to drive the vehicle after a remote start.

Seats

Message	Action
Memory Recall Not Permitted While Driving	Displays as a reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory {0} Saved	Displays to show where your memory setting has been saved.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Stability Control

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	Displayed when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off On	The traction control has been disabled or enabled by the driver.

Starting System

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays when the starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start the vehicle.
Engine Start Pending Please Wait	Displays when the starter is attempting to start the vehicle.
Pending Start Cancelled	Displays when the pending start has been cancelled.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 372).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 372).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 372). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Transmission

Message	Action
Shift to Park	You switched the engine off and shift select lever is in any position other than park (P).
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	Transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Press Brake Pedal	Displays when the brake pedal needs to be depressed.
Transmission Over Temperature Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Service Required	See an authorized dealer.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Message	Action
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	The transmission has limited functionality. See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typical after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 329).
SHIFT SYS FAULT Confirm Park Brake Apply Before Exiting the Vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Vehicle is Shifting to Park	Displays when there is a system fault while the vehicle is shifting to park. See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Reverse Unavailable Service Required	Displays when there is a system fault while the vehicle is shifting to reverse. See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Drive Unavailable Select S for Drive Service Required	See an authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Neutral Unavailable Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Sport Unavailable Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
Invalid Gear Selection	Displays when an invalid gear has been selected.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Message	Action
Depress Brake to Shift from Park	Displays when the brake pedal needs to be depressed to enable the transmission to shift from park.
Stay in Neutral Mode Engaged	Displays when neutral hold is active. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 188).
To Stay in Neutral When Exiting Vehicle Select N Again	Displays when the neutral button N needs to be pressed again to enter neutral hold. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 188).

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E289586

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.*

Note: *You can control some of the climate features through the touchscreen.*

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius.*

Setting the Blower Motor Speed

Press and release **+** or **-** to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

Setting the Temperature

Press and release **+** or **-** on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: *This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.*

Press and release **+** or **-** on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off

AUTO Press and release the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off

A/C Press and release the button.

Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: *In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.*

Switching the Climate Control On and Off

Press and release the button.

Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off

DUAL Press and release the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Switching Defrost On and Off

Press and release the button to distribute air through the windshield air vents and de-mister.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

DEALER ePROCESS

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Press and release the button for maximum cooling.

The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Press and release the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with ***A/C***, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except* ***MAX A/C*** *to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.*

Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off (If Equipped)



See **Heated Seats** (page 154).

Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off (If Equipped)



See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 155).

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Note: *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary.*

Note: *The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.*

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press and release ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press and release ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press and release ***MAX A/C***.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press and release ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

HEATED WINDSHIELD (IF EQUIPPED)

Windshield Wiper De-Icer



When you switch the heated rear window on, the windshield wiper de-icer turns on.

HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage to the heated rear window grid lines.*

HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

DEALER ePROCESS

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 524).

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

REMOTE START

The system adjusts the interior temperature depending on your chosen settings during remote start.

You cannot adjust the climate control setting during remote start operation. When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the previous settings. You can now make adjustments.

Some features may remain on if they turn on during remote start:

- Driver heated seat.
- Driver ventilated seat.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated rear window.
- Windshield wiper de-icer.

Note: *If the passenger heated or ventilated seats are on when you switch the vehicle off, they default to the driver setting when you switch the vehicle on.*

You can adjust the default remote start settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 112).

Automatic Settings

In hot weather, the system sets to 72°F (22°C). The ventilated seats set to high (if available, and if you select ***AUTO*** in the information display).

In moderate weather, the system heats or cools (based on pre-selected settings). The rear defroster, heated mirrors and heated or ventilated seats do not turn on.

In cold weather, the system sets to 72°F (22°C). The heated seats and heated steering wheel set to high (if available, and if you select ***AUTO*** in the information display). The rear defroster and heated mirrors turn on.

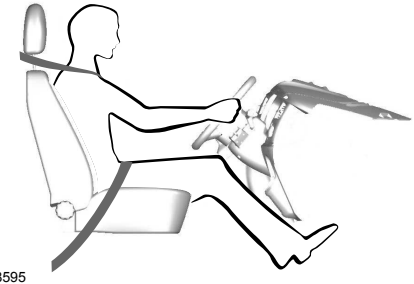
DEP DEALER ePROCESS

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30° from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

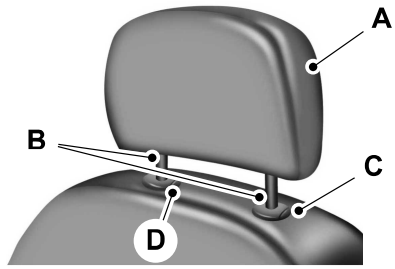
HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Note: *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Front Seat Manual Head Restraints (If Equipped)



E138642

The front head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
D	Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

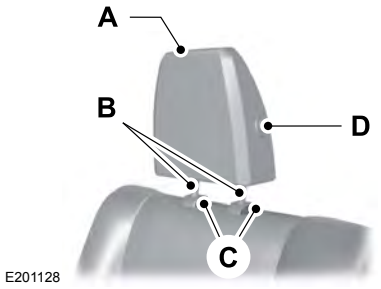
Note: *You cannot remove front seat head restraints that have entertainment system video screens.*

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints



The rear outermost head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve unlock and remove buttons.
D	Fold button.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold both C buttons.
2. Pull the head restraint up.

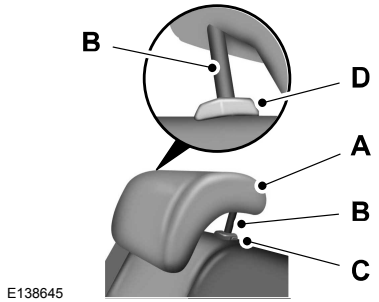
Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Folding the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button D.
2. Pull the head restraint back up to reset.

Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



The rear center head restraint consists of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
D	Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Power Front Head Restraint (If Equipped)



E196925

Tilting Manual Head Restraints

The front seat head restraints tilt for extra comfort.



E144727

1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

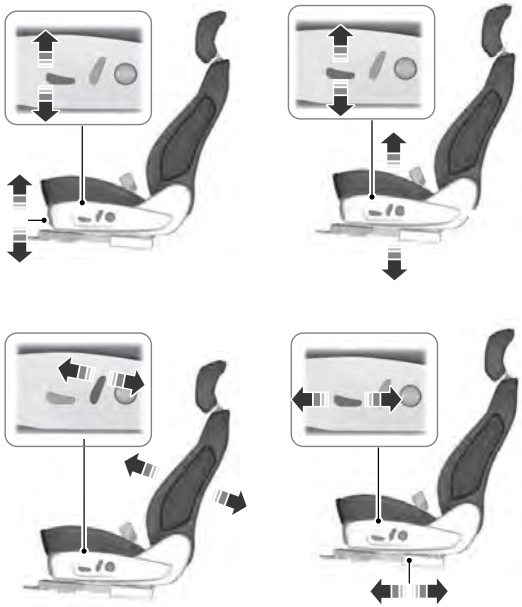
POWER SEATS

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-



E200942

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)



E165608

Adjusting the Length of the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



E196924

Adjusting the Upper Seat Backrest and Head Restraint (If Equipped)

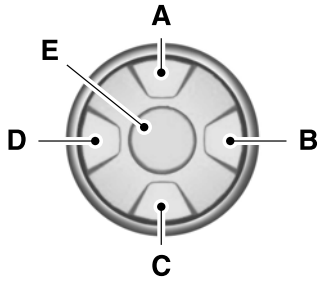


E200950

Adjusting the Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion (If Equipped)

Note: *The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.*

Note: *Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. The seat backrest and cushion massage cannot function at the same time.*



E156301

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

	Massage Mode	Lumbar and Bolster Mode
A	Back massage intensity adjustment	Upper lumbar
B	Massage intensity decrease and off[1]	Lumbar decrease
C	Cushion massage intensity adjustment	Lower lumbar[2]
D	Massage intensity increase	Lumbar increase
E	On and off	-

[1] The massage feature defaults to an alternating massage mode with back massage intensity adjustment. The lumbar and bolster features default to the middle lumbar mode.

[2] Press C a second time to adjust the back bolster. Press C a third time to adjust the cushion bolster.

You can also adjust this feature through the touchscreen.



Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.

When switched on, the system displays directions for you to adjust the lumbar settings in your seat or to set the massage function.

To access and make adjustments to the lumbar setting:

1. Choose the seat to adjust.
2. Press the + or - to adjust the lumbar intensity.

To access and make adjustments to the massage setting:

1. Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.
2. Choose the seat to adjust.
3. Press OFF, LO or HI.

MEMORY FUNCTION

WARNING: Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature automatically recalls the position of the following:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.
- Optional power steering column.

The memory control is on the driver door.



E142554

Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

Recalling a PreSet Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The memory features move to the position stored for that preset.

Note: *You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) (and your vehicle is not moving) if the ignition is on.*

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your intelligent access key fob if it is linked to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked key fob is present.
- Recalling a personal profile in your SYNC 3 menu.

Note: *Using a linked key fob to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat to the Easy Entry position.*

Note: *Pressing any active memory feature adjustment control (or any memory button) during a memory recall cancels the operation.*

Easy Entry and Exit Feature

If you enable the easy entry and exit feature, it automatically moves the driver seat position rearward up to 2 in (5 cm) when you switch the ignition off.

The driver seat will return to its previous position when you switch the ignition on.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

You can enable or disable this feature through the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 112).

Personal Profiles

This feature allows you to create multiple personal profiles enabling users to personalize vehicle's settings. You can create one profile for each preset memory seat button along with a guest profile. You can recall a profile using SYNC 3 or the preset button you selected when you created your profile. You can also link a keyfob to your profile, which is used to recall it.

Creating a Personal Profile

Use the SYNC display to create a personal profile.

1. Switch the ignition on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. Select the Personal Profiles button under Settings.
3. Follow the instructions on the display.

Linking a Personal Profile to your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Keyfob

You can save preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or intelligent access (IA) keys, by assigning a keyfob to a personal profile in your SYNC 3.

Use the SYNC display to link a keyfob to a personal profile.

1. Switch the ignition on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. Select the Personal Profiles button under Settings.
3. Touch the arrow for the profile you wish to link a keyfob to.
4. Select the Link Keyfob button.
5. Follow the instructions on the display.

Note: *If more than one linked remote control or intelligent access key is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.*

Note: *The guest profile consists of existing settings when there is no driver profile created. After you create a driver profile, the guest profile serves as an additional driver profile.*

Note: *You cannot link a personalized name, a memory seat button or a keyfob to a guest profile.*

Personal Settings

Personal profiles allow you to personalize positional settings such as seats and mirrors, as well as non-positional settings such as radio, navigation, driver assist and system settings. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 415). You cannot change the menu locations and settings of those personalized features with personal profiles.

Note: *Non-positional settings are saved to the active driver profile whenever you change a setting.*

Note: *You can save positional settings if you press and hold a memory seat button. See **Settings** (page 481).*

DEALER ePROCESS

Recalling and Changing a Profile

You can recall a profile by:

- Using a keyfob that has been linked to a driver profile to access the remote start feature, press an unlock button or open the door with the exterior door handle.
- Pressing a memory seat button that has been linked to a driver profile.
- Using the Personal Profiles menu on the SYNC touchscreen.

Note: *The recalled profile replaces the previously active profile. If the active profile is not your desired profile, you can change it using any of the three methods listed.*

When you switch on the personal profiles feature:

- Unlocking a door with a keyfob that is not linked to a driver profile recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It will not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or has not been saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It will not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile but has been saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 501).

When you switch off a personal profile feature:

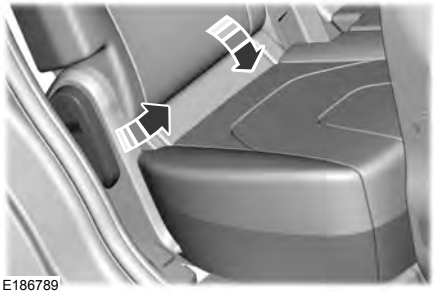
- Unlocking a door with a keyfob recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile and still recalls positional settings from the driver profile which the keyfob had been linked to.
- Pressing a memory seat button that has not been linked to a driver profile or has not been saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It will not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that has been linked to a driver profile or has saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

DEALER ePROCESS

REAR SEATS

Adjusting the Rear Seats

WARNING: To prevent possible damage to the seat or safety belts, make sure that the safety belts are not buckled when folding the seatback.


E186789

Folding the Seatback

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward.

Unfolding the Seatback

Rotate the seatback upward until the seatback latches in the upright position. The seatback will click when it is locked into position.

Reclining the Seatback

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seatback.

Easy Fold™ Folding Seat

WARNING: Make sure that the seat is unoccupied when folding it down. Folding the seat while occupied could result in damage to the seat or injury.

Note: *The power feature is operational when the vehicle is in park (P) and the liftgate has been open for less than 10 minutes.*

The controls are located on the left-hand rear quarter trim panel (accessible from the liftgate area).



E187106

Folding the Seatback

Press and hold the left control to lower the left seatback. Press and hold the right control to lower the right seatback.

Unfolding the Seatback

Rotate the seatback up until the seatback latches in the upright position. The seatback will click when it is locked into position.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

Front Seats

WARNING: People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must use caution when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that may block the heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This can cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This damages the heating element and can cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

Note: *The heated seats only function when the engine is running.*



E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Note: *After 90 minutes of operation, the heated seats switch off. Press the heated seat symbol to switch the heated seats on.*

Rear Seats

WARNING: People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must use caution when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that may block the heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This can cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This damages the heating element and can cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The heated seats only function when the engine is running.*

The rear seat heat controls are on the rear of the center console.



E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Note: *After an extended period of time, the heated seats switch off. Press the heated seat symbol to switch the heated seats on.*

CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

Heated Seats

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: *The heated seats switch on during a remote start if they are enabled. See* ***Remote Start*** *(page 141).*

Note: *The heated seats may also switch on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you previously switched your vehicle off.*

Note: *Do not do the following:*

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.



E146322

Press this symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

DEALER ePROCESS

Ventilated Seats

Note: *The ventilated seats switch on during a remote start if they are enabled. See* ***Remote Start*** *(page 141).*

Note: *The ventilated seats may also switch on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you previously switched your vehicle off.*

Note: *Do not do the following:*

- Spill liquid on the front seats. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
- Place cargo or objects under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.

The ventilated seats only function when the engine is running.



E224689

Press this symbol to cycle through the various ventilation settings and off. More indicator lights indicate higher fan speeds.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the ventilated seats are on, the feature turns itself off. You need to reactivate it.

Note: *To improve comfort, use the ventilated seats along with the vehicle's air conditioning system.*

DEALER ePROCESS

UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (IF EQUIPPED)

HomeLink Wireless Control System

WARNING: Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Note: *Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.*

Note: *Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.*

Note: *We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons. See* ***Erasing the Function Button Codes****.*

Note: *You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, you must first erase the current settings. See* ***Erasing the Function Button Codes****.*



E142657

The universal garage door opener replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the driver's sun visor.

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. As well as being programmed for garage doors, the system transmitter can be programmed to operate entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional system information can be found online at www.homelink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or by calling the toll-free help line on 1-800-355-3515.

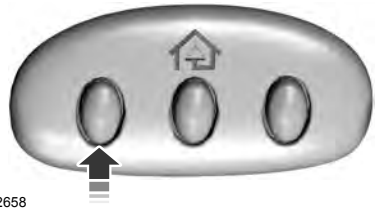
In-Vehicle Programming

This process is to program your hand-held transmitter and your in-vehicle HomeLink button.

Note: *The programming steps below assume you will be programming HomeLink that was not previously programmed.*

Note: *Put a new battery in the hand-held transmitter. This will ensure quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E142658

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, turn your ignition to the **on** position, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Hold your hand-held garage door transmitter 2–6 in (5–14 cm) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously, press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the hand-held transmitter button. DO NOT release either one until the HomeLink indicator light flashes slowly and then rapidly. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both buttons may be released. The rapid flashing indicates successful training.

Note: *You may need to use a different method if you live in Canada or have difficulties programming your gate operator or garage door opener. See* ***Gate Operator / Canadian Programming.***

4. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If your garage door does not operate, watch the HomeLink indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on, the programming is complete. No further action is needed.

If the indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then turns to a constant light, the HomeLink button is not programmed yet. See **Programming Your Garage Door Opener Motor.**

To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1 – 4.

For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming Your Garage Door Opener Motor

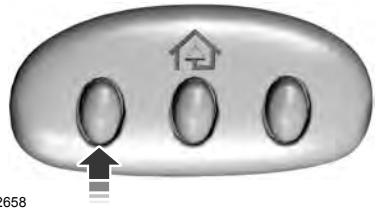
Note: *You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the cover or lamp lens on your garage door opener.*



E142659

1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
2. Return to your vehicle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E142658

3. Press and hold the function button you want to program for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this step. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

Gate Operator / Canadian Programming

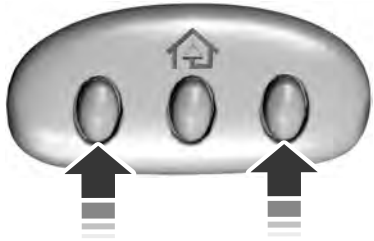
Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to "time-out" (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to "time-out" in the same manner.

Note: *If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the "cycling" process to prevent possible overheating.*

1. Press and hold the HomeLink button while you press and release, **every two seconds**, your hand-held transmitter until the HomeLink indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light.
2. Release both the HomeLink and hand-held transmitter buttons.
3. Continue programing HomeLink. See **In-Vehicle Programming**.

Erasing the Function Button Codes

Note: *You cannot erase individual buttons.*



E142660

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights above the buttons flash rapidly.
2. When the indicator lights flash, release the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

Reprogramming a Single Button

To program a device to a previously trained button, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired button. Do NOT release the button.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

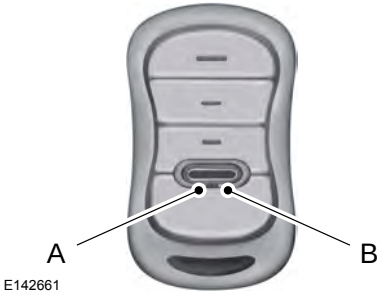
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, follow Step 1 in the Programming section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming to a Genie Intellicode 2 Garage Door Opener

Note: *The Genie Intellicode 2 transmitter must already be programmed to operate with the garage door opener.*

Note: *To program HomeLink to the transmitter you must first put the transmitter into programming mode.*



A. Red indicator light

B. Green indicator light

1. Press and hold one of the buttons on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from green to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change to programming mode. If done properly the indicator light will appear red.
3. Hold the transmitter within 1–3 in (2–8 cm) of the button on the visor you want to program.
4. Press and hold both the programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter and the button you want to program. The indicator light on the visor will flash rapidly when the programming is successful.

Note: *The Genie transmitter will transmit for up to 30 seconds. If HomeLink does not program within 30 seconds the Genie transmitter will need to be pressed again. If the Genie transmitter indicator light displays green and red, release the button until the indicator light turns off before pressing the button again.*

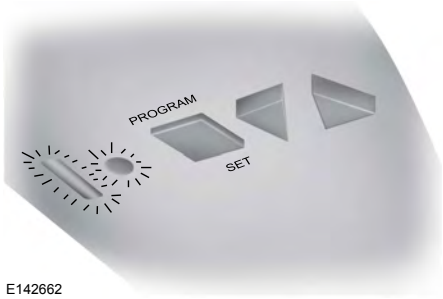
Once HomeLink has been programmed successfully, the Genie transmitter must be changed out of program mode. To do this:

1. Press and hold the previously programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from red to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change. If done correctly the indicator light will turn green.

DEALER ePROCESS

Programming HomeLink to the Genie Intellicode Garage Door Opener Motor

Note: *You may need a ladder to access the garage door opener motor.*



E142662

1. Press and hold the program button on the garage door opener motor until both blue indicator lights turn on.
2. Release the program button. Only the smaller round indicator light should be on.
3. Press and release the program button. The larger purple indicator light will flash.

Note: *The next two steps must be completed in 30 seconds.*

4. Press and release the Genie Intellicode 2 hand-held transmitter's previously programmed button. Both indicator lights on the garage door opener motor unit should now flash purple.
5. Press and hold the previously programmed button on the visor for 2 seconds. Repeat this step up to 3 times until the garage door moves.

Programming is now complete.

Clearing a HomeLink Device

To erase programming from the three HomeLink buttons press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. The indicator light will begin flashing in 10 to 20 seconds, at which time both buttons should be released. Programming has now been erased, and the indicator light should blink slowly to indicate the device is in train mode when any of the three HomeLink buttons are pressed.

FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.
Note: *Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the power point and may blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

USB Port and Power Point Locations

USB Ports and Power Points may be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the front of the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- On the passenger side floor panel.
- 3rd row on the quarter trim panels.

Note: *Some of the USB ports may not have data transfer capabilities.*

110 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *The power point turns off when you switch off the ignition, when the vehicle is not in accessory mode or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.*

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E247586

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is ON or the vehicle is in accessory mode.
- Off: The power point is OFF, the ignition is OFF or the vehicle is not in accessory mode.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

Due to the different technologies used on its construction, some devices may exceed the capacity shown on its label when they are initially plugged-in.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

Note: *Devices without built-in Qi wireless charging receivers require an additional Qi receiver or sleeve.*

The system supports one Qi wireless charging compatible device on the charging area.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip, for example passports, parking tickets or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage may occur to the magnetic strip.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance.

Note: *The rate of charge, or charging power, is controlled by the device. During charging, the device and the charger may heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the charger may stop charging.*



The charging area is on the center console or lower instrument panel. See **Center Console** (page 166).

You can charge a device if the vehicle is off when in accessory mode or if SYNC is on.

To begin charging, place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

Note: *If the system detects a foreign object or if the device is misaligned on the charging area, a message appears in the display.*

Message	Behavior	Description
Wireless Charger Active	Message on screen display or pop-up window.	This message appears when wireless charging begins.
Charging Terminated Phone misaligned or object between phone and charger detected. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Pop-up window.	The system stops charging your device if the system detects the phone is misaligned, or a foreign metal object is on the charging surface.

FCC ID: L2C0066T

DEALER ePROCESS

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with part 18 of the FCC Rules.

- This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that the interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.
- This product is not end-user serviceable.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause interference, and
- This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

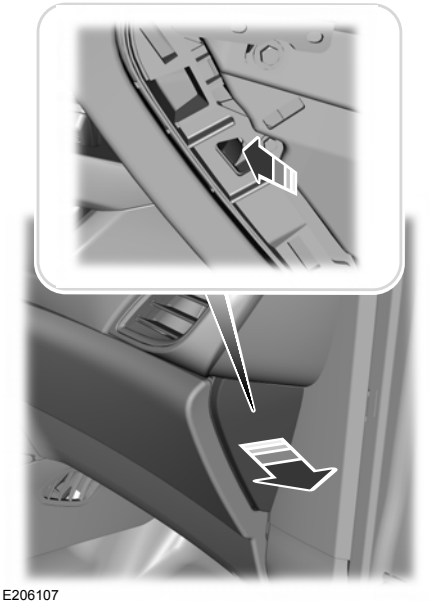
GLOVE COMPARTMENT


E199447

You can open the glove box by pressing the button on the instrument panel.

Note: *The electronic glove box does not function if the vehicle battery is dead, or if you switch the ignition off and lock the vehicle.*

Manual Entry

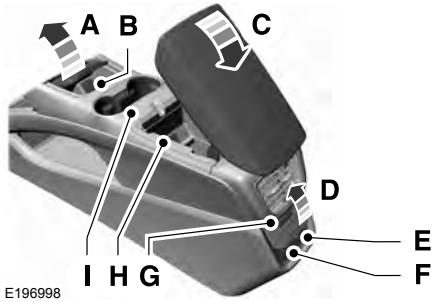

E206107

1. Open passenger door.
2. Remove end cap of instrument panel.
3. Insert a pen or pencil into the latch device to release glove box.

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:



E196998

A Front storage compartment.

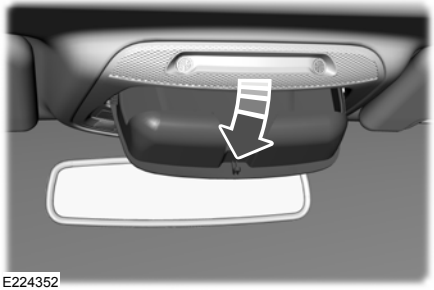
B USB port.

C Center storage compartment.

DEALER ePROCESS

D Rear auxiliary power point cover.
E Auxiliary power point.
F AC power point or USB ports.
G Rear heated seats (If equipped).
H Auxiliary power point and USB port.
I Cup holders.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE


E224352

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

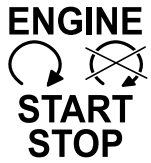
When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING

Note: *The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.*

Note: *A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Ignition Modes



E191075

The keyless starting system has three modes:

Off: Turns the ignition off.

DEALER ePROCESS

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

On: All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

Note: *You may have to press the push button ignition switch twice to switch the ignition on.*

Start: Starts the engine.

- Press the brake pedal, and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when then ignition is on and when the engine starts.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases. This helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds without the engine starting before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting the engine check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

Keyless Starting

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.*

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

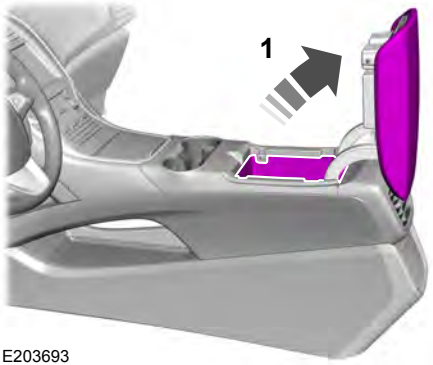
The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:

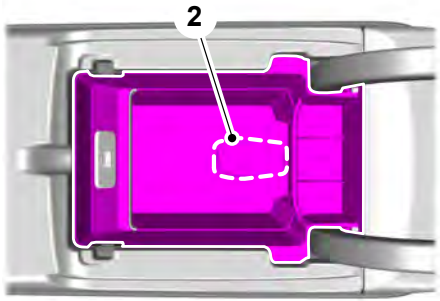
DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-



E203693

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.



E203694

2. With the buttons facing upward and the unlock button facing the front of your vehicle, place the intelligent access key into the backup slot.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

4. Keep the accelerator pedal fully depressed and press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

This feature automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Reset the timer by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Temporarily switch off the shutdown feature during the current ignition cycle using the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).
- Press **OK** or **RESET** to temporarily switch the feature off during the current ignition cycle.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators will be turned off.*

Note: *If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shuts down.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING: Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Put the transmission into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P).
3. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

DEALER ePROCESS

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (3 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

WARNING: Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

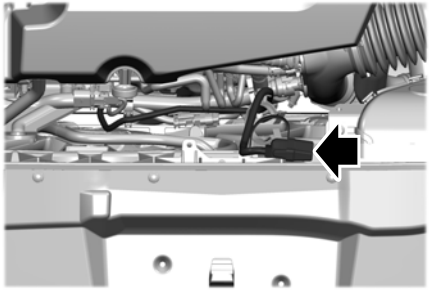
- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.

DEALER ePROCESS

- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater is under the hood, on the upper radiator support.



Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

AUTO-START-STOP

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Make sure you shift into park (P) for vehicles with an automatic transmission. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

WARNING: Before opening the hood or performing any maintenance, fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N) and switch the ignition off.

WARNING: Always switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle. If the ignition is switched on an automatic restart may occur at any time.

WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The system helps reduce fuel consumption by automatically shutting off and restarting the engine while stopped. Auto-Start-Stop engine shutdown only occurs when you place the transmission in drive (D) and press the brake pedal. The engine will restart automatically when you release the brake pedal and place the transmission in drive (D).

In some situations, your vehicle may restart automatically, for example:

- To maintain interior comfort.
- To recharge the battery.

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.*

The Auto-Start-Stop system status is available at a glance within the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 112).

Enabling Auto-Start-Stop

The system automatically enables every time you start your vehicle if:

- You do not press the Auto-Start-Stop button (not illuminated).
- Your vehicle exceeds an initial speed of 2.5 mph (4 km/h) after you have initially started the vehicle.
- You have stopped your vehicle.
- The transmission is in drive (D) and you press the brake pedal.
- The driver door is closed.
- There is adequate brake vacuum.
- The interior compartment has cooled or warmed to an acceptable level.
- You have not turned the steering wheel rapidly or you do not have it at a sharp angle.
- The vehicle is not on a steep uphill road slope.
- The battery is within optimal operating conditions (battery state of charge and temperature in range).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

- The engine coolant is at operating temperature.
- Elevation is below about 10,000 ft (3,048 m).
- Ambient temperature is moderate.

The green Auto-Start-Stop indicator light on the instrument cluster will illuminate to indicate when the automatic engine stop occurs.

If the instrument cluster is equipped with a grey Auto-Start-Stop indicator light, it is illuminated when automatic engine stop is not available due to one of the above noted conditions not being met.

Automatic Engine Restart

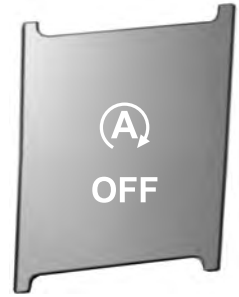
Any of the following conditions will result in an automatic restart of the engine:

- You have removed your foot from the brake pedal in drive (D) unless AutoHold has been engaged.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The driver safety belt becomes unfastened or the driver door is ajar.
- You have moved the transmission from drive (D).
- Your vehicle is moving.
- The interior compartment does not meet customer climate control comfort settings when air conditioning or heat is on.
- Fogging of the windows could occur and the air conditioning is on.
- The battery is not within optimal operating conditions.
- You have exceeded the maximum engine off time.
- When you press the Auto-Start-Stop button while the engine is stopped.
- Either the front or rear defroster is turned on.

Any of the following conditions may result in an automatic restart of the engine:

- The blower fan speed is increased or the climate control temperature is changed.
- You have an electrical accessory turned on or plugged in.

Disabling Auto-Start-Stop



E183186

Note: *If the system detects a malfunction, it turns off. If this remains inactive after an ignition cycle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop, the battery requirement is different. Replace it with one of exactly the same specification as the original.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Press the Auto-Start-Stop button located on the center stack to switch the system off. The button will illuminate. This will only deactivate the system for the current ignition cycle. Press the button again to restore Auto-Start-Stop function.

Note: *If the Shift to P, Restart Engine message appears and the amber Auto-Start-Stop indicator light is flashing, automatic restart is not available. You must restart the vehicle manually.* *See* ***Information Displays*** *(page 112).*

If the vehicle is in an engine off Auto-Start-Stop state and the transmission is changed to reverse (R) while the brake pedal is not pressed, the message Auto-Start-Stop Press Brake to Start Engine will appear.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

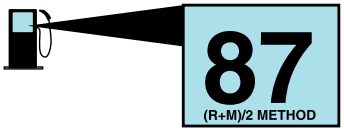
Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

FUEL QUALITY

Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing** (page 272).

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance. For additional information, refer to www.toptiergas.com.

Note: *Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: *If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.*

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

WARNING: Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 178).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

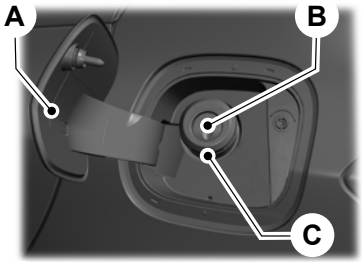

E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

REFUELING

Refueling System Overview



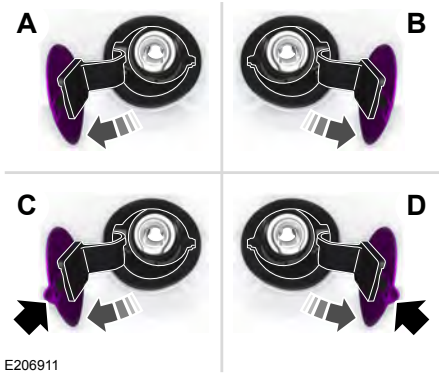
E267248

A Fuel filler door.

B Fuel tank filler valve.

C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



E206911

A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

DEALER ePROCESS

C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

Refueling Your Vehicle

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

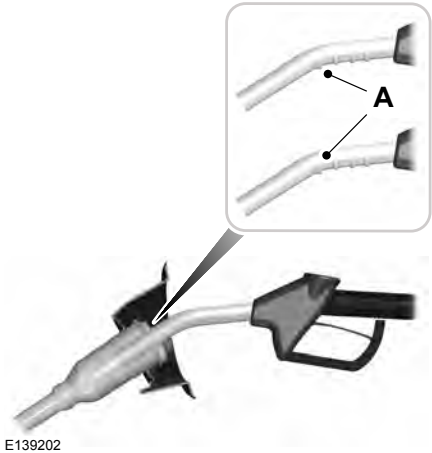
WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

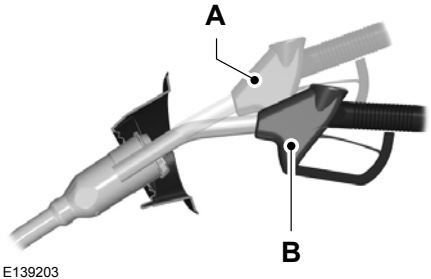
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



E139202

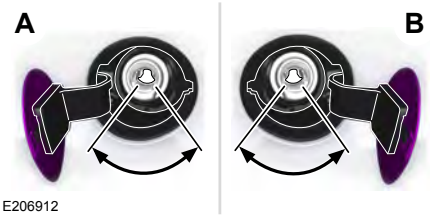
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E206912

5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

Message
Check Fuel Fill Inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 178). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.

DEALER ePROCESS

9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: *The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See **General Information** (page 112).

The first 1,000 mi (1,500 km) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 mi (3,000 km).

Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures.
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol. See **Fuel Quality** (page 178).
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

EMISSION LAW

WARNING: Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.

Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.
- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.

DEALER ePROCESS

- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.
- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

Note: *Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.*

Note: *If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 284).
- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: *Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Lincoln, Motorcraft or Lincoln-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Lincoln parts should be equivalent to genuine Lincoln Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 180).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

DEALER ePROCESS

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

1. 15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
2. Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

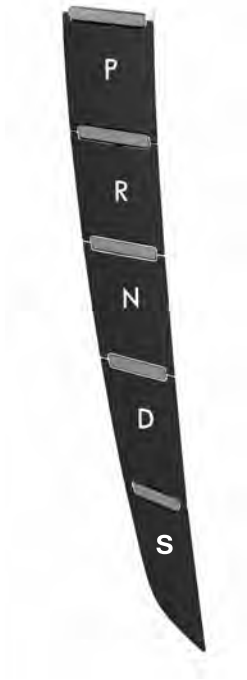
WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

Note: *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the intelligent access key is inside the vehicle.*

Push Button Shift Transmission

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic transmission. The shift buttons are located near the middle of the instrument panel. The gears are selected by pressing and releasing the **PRNDS** buttons.



E146223

DEALER ePROCESS

Every time a gear is selected, the selected button illuminates. You also see the gear selected appear in the instrument cluster.



E155989

Understanding the Positions of your Electronic Transmission

Note: *Always come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).*

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Press and release the button on the instrument panel of the gear you want to select.
3. The gearshift button you select illuminates and the selected gear appears in the instrument cluster.
4. Release the brake pedal and your transmission remains in the selected gear.

Note: *If you attempt to leave your vehicle when it is in gear, your vehicle automatically shifts into park (P). Seatbelt and door monitors determine your intent and make the shift for you. During this time, a message appears in the information display screen prompting you to make the shift to park (P).*

Note: *To put your vehicle in gear with the door open, perform steps 1-4. See the Automatic Return to Park section in this chapter for more information on this feature.*

Park (P)

With the transmission in park (P), your vehicle locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning. Always come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P). An audible tone sounds once you select park (P).

When the ignition is turned off, the vehicle automatically shifts into park (P). If the ignition is turned off when the vehicle is moving, it first shifts into neutral (N) until a slow enough speed is reached. The vehicle then shifts into park (P) automatically.

The electric parking brake may apply when you shift to park (P) without the brake pedal fully pressed. The electric parking brake applies when you shift to park (P) on large slopes. The electric parking brake releases with the drive away release function or manually as described in the Releasing the Electric Parking Brake section. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 201).

Automatic Return to Park

Note: *This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in Stay in Neutral mode or neutral tow.*

Your vehicle has a feature that automatically shifts your vehicle into park (P) when any of the following conditions occur:

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

- You turn the ignition off
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched
- Your seatbelt is unlatched when the driver door is open

If you turn the ignition off when your vehicle is moving, your vehicle first shifts into neutral (N) until it slows down enough to shift into park (P) automatically.

Note: *If you have waited an extended period of time, 2-15 minutes before starting your vehicle, unlatching your seatbelt causes this feature to activate, even with the driver door closed.*

Note: *This feature may not work properly if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning. If your door ajar indicator does not illuminate when you open the driver's door or the indicator illuminates with the driver's door closed, see your authorized dealer.*

Reverse (R)

With the transmission in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

With the transmission in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

Stay in Neutral Mode

Note: *Stay in neutral mode is a temporary vehicle state with the ignition off. Once in this mode, the battery must maintain sufficient voltage or your vehicle returns to park.*

Note: *When entering an automatic car wash, always shift to Neutral (N). If you are exiting the vehicle before the car wash, Stay in Neutral Mode is available.*

Extended usage of Stay in Neutral mode may result in a battery voltage reduction to a level where the vehicle may no longer start.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

To enter Stay in Neutral mode, do the following:

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *A message appears in the information display.*

3. Press the neutral (N) button.

Note: *A confirmation message appears in the information display when your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector blinks slowly.*

To exit Stay in Neutral mode, press the brake pedal and shift into another gear.

Drive (D)

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy.

Sport (S)

Putting the vehicle in sport (S):

DEALER ePROCESS

- Provides additional engine braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This increases engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Provides gear selection more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission

Your SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears manually.

Paddle Shifters

With your vehicle in drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

You can achieve extensive manual control by pressing the sport (S) button.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.



E144821

The system determines when temporary manual control is no longer in use and returns to automatic control.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Upshifts When Accelerating - Recommended for Best Fuel Economy	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)

Upshifts When Accelerating - Recommended for Best Fuel Economy	
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)
6 - 7	55 mph (88 km/h)
7 - 8	60 mph (97 km/h)

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear.

The transmission automatically upshifts if your engine speed is too high or downshift if your engine speed is too low.

Note: *The system stays in manual control until you make another shift button selection. For example, drive (D).*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Manual Park Release

WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

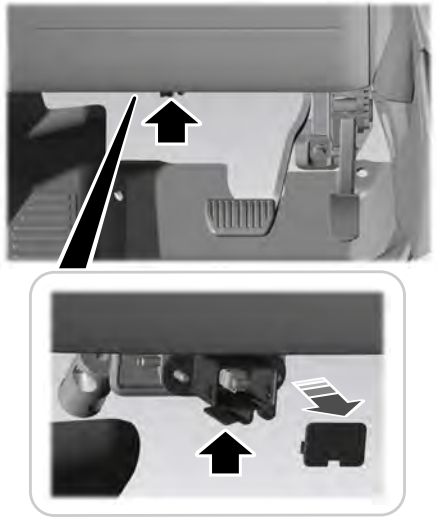
WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

Use the manual park release to move your transmission from the park (P) position in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Activating the Manual Park Release Cable

1. Apply the parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 201).

Note: *If vehicle battery is dead, for example, no electrical power available, an external power may be required to apply the parking brake.*

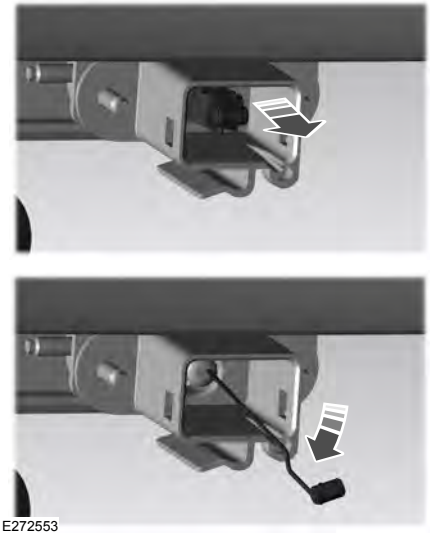


E272552

2. Locate the manual park release cable access cover under the dash, below the steering wheel.
3. Using a tool, carefully remove the screw from the access cover and open.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Do not pull the tether until you are in the driver's seat.*



E272553

4. Once in the driver's seat, fully apply the brake pedal and hold. Do not release. Pull the orange tether outward towards the driver seat.
5. Switch the ignition on, but do not start your vehicle. Move the tether to the lower right-hand corner to lock it into the override position. If done correctly, a message on the instrument cluster displays Park Not Available, Transmission Not In Park or Shift System Fault.

Note: *Your vehicle is now out of the park (P) position and is free to roll.*

6. With your foot still fully applied on the brake pedal, disengage the parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 201).
7. Your vehicle remains in neutral (N) for emergency towing purposes.
8. Switch off the ignition.
9. Once safe to do so, and there is no risk that your vehicle will roll, disconnect the negative (black) battery cable from the battery.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Once it is safe to do so, reconnect the negative (black) battery cable to the battery.
2. Apply the parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 201).

Note: *If vehicle battery is dead, for example, no electrical power available, an external power may be required to apply the parking brake.*

3. Fully apply the brake pedal and hold, do not release. Pull the orange tether outward towards the driver seat to remove it from the override position.
4. Move the tether towards the left and release to return it to the rest position.
5. Stow the manual park release cable tether, install the access cover and replace the screw.
6. With your foot fully applied on the brake pedal, start your vehicle. Confirm that your vehicle is in the park (P) position and that the instrument cluster indicates park (P).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

7. If the instrument cluster is not displaying the park (P) position or there is a message stating Park Not Available, Transmission Not In Park or Shift System Fault, apply the parking brake before exiting your vehicle. Contact an authorized dealer for service.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature increases durability and provides consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm or soft shifts. This operation does not affect function or durability of your transmission and is normal. Over time, the adaptive learning process can fully updates transmission operation. Additionally, the strategy must be relearned whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if your engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to your transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to your transmission and tires may occur, or your engine may overheat.*

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with AdvanceTrac with Roll Stability Control, it may be beneficial to disengage the AdvanceTrac with Roll Stability Control system when attempting to rock the vehicle.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you can help rock your vehicle out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

DEALER ePROCESS

USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

Note: *The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress that might result in damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.*

Note: *A warning message appears in the information display when an AWD system fault is present. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 118). An AWD system fault causes the AWD system to default to front-wheel drive only mode. When this warning message displays, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer*

Note: *A warning message appears in the information display if the AWD system has overheated. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 118). This condition may occur if you operate the vehicle in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. After you restart the engine and the AWD system adequately cools, the warning message turns off and normal AWD function returns.*

Do not use a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided. If the mini-spare tire is installed, the AWD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. A warning in the information display appears, indicating that the system is in front-wheel drive only mode. See **Information Messages** (page 118). If there is a warning message in the information display from using the spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and cycling the ignition off and on. We recommend that you reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the AWD system.

Driving in Special Conditions with All-Wheel Drive (AWD)

AWD vehicles are ready to drive on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Basic operating principles in special conditions

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

If Your Vehicle Goes Off the Edge of the Pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply when returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to first gear. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you can rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle has AdvanceTrac™ with Roll Stability Control™, it may be beneficial to disengage the AdvanceTrac with Roll Stability Control system when attempting to rock the vehicle.

Emergency Maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid "over-driving" your vehicle, for example, turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering results in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, use smooth variations of the accelerator and brake pedal pressure if changes in vehicle speed are necessary. Avoid

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.
- If your vehicle goes from one type of surface to another, for example, from concrete to gravel, there may be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver, such as, steering, acceleration or braking. Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Driving your AWD in deep sand may cause the AWD system to overheat. After the system cools down, normal AWD function returns.

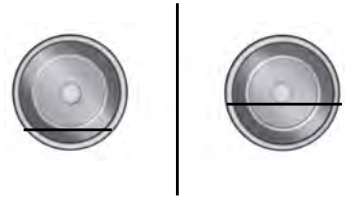
Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that you may need assistance from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



E142667

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying improves when you move your vehicle slowly when applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even AWD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.*

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, have the power transfer unit (PTU) or rear axle serviced by an authorized dealer.



E143950

"Tread Lightly" is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Our Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by "treading lightly."

Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Note: *Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you want to use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse (R) over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



E143949

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral (N); instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.

Driving on Snow and Ice

WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

Note: *Excessive tire slippage can cause driveline damage.*

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide when driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it does not stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle comes with a four wheel (ABS), do not “pump” the brakes. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 201).

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, we strongly recommend that you do not make modifications, such as, adding or removing parts, for example, lowering kits or stabilizer bars, or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle may rollover as a result of a loss of control. We recommend that you use caution with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device, such as ladder or luggage racks.

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to off-highway usage.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning the Wheels*** *(page 344).*

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Switch the engine off, move the transmission to park (P) and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the anti-lock braking system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 107).

Note: *Indicators vary depending on region.*



This lamp also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have the system checked immediately.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery is running out of charge.

Your vehicle has an electric parking brake. You operate it with a switch instead of a lever. The switch is on the center console or to the left-hand side of the steering wheel, on the lower part of the instrument panel.

Note: *The electric parking brake makes noises during operation. This is normal.*

Applying the Electric Parking Brake



Pull the switch upward.



The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.



Note: *It remains illuminated for a short period of time after you switch the ignition off.*

If it continues to flash or does not illuminate, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

Note: *The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See* ***Transmission*** *(page 188).*

Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

Note: *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



Pull the switch upward and hold it.



The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on.



The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Switch the ignition on.

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Push the switch downward.



The red warning lamp turns off.



If it remains illuminated or flashes, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.



Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Close the driver door.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.



The red warning lamp turns off.



If it remains illuminated or flashes, the electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the parking brake.

Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery is running out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 284).

DEALER ePROCESS

HILL START ASSIST

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

Note: *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

Note: *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

You cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

DEALER ePROCESS

AUTO HOLD

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system is designed to apply the brakes to hold your vehicle at a standstill after you stop your vehicle and release the brake pedal. This could be beneficial in certain situations, for example when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

Switching Auto Hold On and Off



E227185

Press the button on the center console. The button illuminates when you switch the system on.

Note: *You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door, fasten your seatbelt and start the engine.*

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Make sure you switch the system off before towing with your vehicle or before using an automatic car wash.

Using Auto Hold

1. Use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.

Note: *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure. If your vehicle is on a steep slope, you need to press the brake pedal harder before the system activates.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See* ***Electric Parking Brake*** *(page 201).*

Note: *If auto-start-stop turns off the engine, auto hold remains active.*

Note: *The system deactivates if you shift into reverse (R) and press the brake pedal.*

3. Pull away in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator turns off.

Auto Hold Indicator

The auto hold indicator illuminates in the information display when the system is on and is either active or unavailable.



Illuminates when the system is active. Your vehicle remains stationary after you release the brake pedal.



Illuminates when the system is on but unavailable to hold your vehicle at a standstill.

The system could be unavailable when any of the following occur:

- During an active park assist maneuver.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You do not fasten your seatbelt.
- You shift into reverse (R) before the system is active.

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

WARNING: The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off with the traction control switch.

Using a Switch

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

DEALER ePROCESS

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Electronic Stability Control

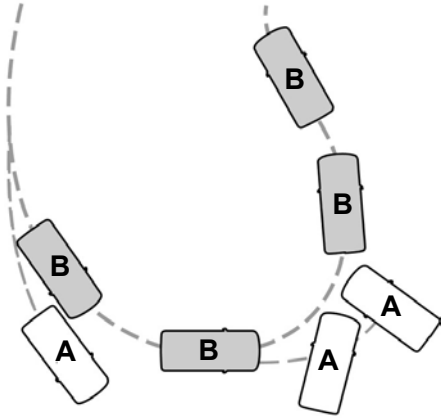
The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Roll Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 206).



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

Electronic Stability Control

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on. The electronic stability control portion of the system is disabled when the transmission is in reverse (R) or, on some models, if you press and hold the electronic stability control button for more than five seconds when you apply the brakes and the vehicle is at a stop. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 206).

DEALER ePROCESS

ESC Features			
Button Functions	**Mode**	**Stability Control Off Light**	**Traction Control System**
Default at start-up	-	On during bulb check	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Traction control off	On	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	Traction control on	Off	Enabled

Note: *Do not use the sport stability control setting on public roadways.*

Some models may also come with a sport mode which allows the driver to reduce normal electronic stability control system intervention and provide a more spirited driving experience. To enter sport mode, toggle the stability control button twice rapidly. The message appears in the information display that the system is now in sport mode.

For vehicles with the selectable drive mode feature, electronic stability control sport mode is not available. You can utilize the performance oriented electronic stability control mode by selecting track drive mode. In this mode, electronic stability control intervention is reduced and tuned specifically for track use only and is not for use on public roads. In all of the selectable drive modes, you can disable traction control and electronic stability control with the electronic stability control switch.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system.This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: *If your vehicle has MyKey™, the sensing system cannot be switched off when a MyKey™ is present. See* ***Principle of Operation*** *(page 61).*

Note: *Keep the sensors on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid may detect the trailer and therefore provide an alert. Disable the rear parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the system off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **Using Traction Control** (page 206). If your vehicle has a parking aid button, you can switch the system off by pressing the button.

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 118).

DEALER ePROCESS

REAR PARKING AID

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 12 in (30 cm) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.



E130178

Coverage area of up to 6 ft (1.8 m) from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R):

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away from the bumper.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

FRONT PARKING AID (IF EQUIPPED)

The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P) and your vehicle is traveling at low speed.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E187330

Coverage area of up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. The coverage area decreases at the outer corners.

When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

You can switch the system off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 112). If your vehicle has a parking aid button, you can switch the system off by pressing the button.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks turn grey.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when your vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards your vehicle. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning stops after two seconds. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear (for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in a manual transmission), the front sensing system provides audio and visual warnings when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) and an obstacle is inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning stops after two seconds and the visual indication stops after four seconds. If the obstacles detected are within 12 in (30 cm), the visual indication remains on.

If the transmission is in neutral (N), the system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving at 5 mph (8 km/h) or below and an obstacle is inside the detection area. Once your vehicle is stationary, the visual indication stops after four seconds.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

SIDE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The side sensing system uses the front and rear side sensors to detect and map obstacles within the vehicle's driving path, located near the sides of your vehicle. The side sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P).

Note: *Obstacles that enter the side detection area without being detected and mapped by the front or rear side sensors will not be detected.*



E187810

Coverage area is up to 24 in (60 cm) from the sides of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object close to the side of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to obstacles within the driving path of your vehicle, the rate of the audible warning increases.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



E190459

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

As the distance to the obstacle decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon. If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks show greyed out.

When you shift to reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and obstacles are detected within 24 in (60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the audible warning stops after two seconds.

Note: *Visual distance indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

When you shift to drive (D) or any other forward gear, for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in manual transmission, the side sensing system provides audible and visual distance warnings when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 5 mph

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

(8 km/h) and obstacles are detected within 24 in (60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. Once your vehicle reaches a standstill condition, the audible warning stops after two seconds and visual indication stops after four seconds.

If the transmission is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual distance indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 24 in (60 cm) from the side of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the visual distance indication stops after four seconds.

If the side sensing system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not appear.

The side sensing system is not available under the following condition:

- If you switch the traction control system off.

The side sensing system may not be available until you have driven approximately the length of your vehicle in order for the system to reinitialize if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system is activated.
- The traction control system is activated.
- When the steering wheel angle information is not available, the side sensing system is not available. The vehicle must be driven at least 492 ft (150 m) above 19 mph (30 km/h) to recover the steering wheel angle information.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

WARNING: Active park assist does not apply the brakes under any circumstances.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Active park assist is a multi-step process and may require you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until the parking maneuver is complete.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system by grabbing the steering wheel, or by taking full control of your vehicle after pressing the active park assist button.

Keep your hands, hair, clothing and any loose items clear of the steering wheel when using active park assist.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover up the sensors.*

Note: *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves. The sensors may falsely detect objects due to ultrasonic interference caused by motorcycle exhausts, truck air brakes or horns, for example.*

Note: *If you change any tires, the system must recalibrate and may not correctly operate for a short time.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire that is significantly worn more than the other tires.
- One or more tires are incorrectly inflated.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space. For example, a pedestrian or cyclist.
- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground. For example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck.
- The weather conditions are poor. For example, during heavy rain, snow, fog, high humidity and high temperatures.

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached an add-on accessory close to the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, a bike rack or trailer.
- You have attached an overhanging object to the roof. For example, a surfboard.
- The front bumper, rear bumper or the side sensors are damaged.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle. For example, a mini-spare tire.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Using Active Park Assist

Selecting an Active Park Assist Mode

Press the button once to activate parallel parking. Press the button a second time to activate perpendicular parking. If you press the button again the system switches off.

If your vehicle is parked and after you switch the ignition on, you can use the information display to toggle through the modes. Press the button to switch the system on and open the system menu in the information display.

Note: *If your vehicle is parked, the default mode is parallel park out assist. However, if you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, use the information display to select park out assist.*

Note: *You can repeatedly press the active park assist button to toggle through the modes only after moving your vehicle approximately 33 ft (10 m).*

To toggle through the modes, use the buttons on the information display to select the following:

- Parallel parking.
- Perpendicular parking.
- Parallel park out assist.
- Switch the system off.

Note: *There is no time limit for toggling through the modes.*

Parallel Parking

The system detects available parallel parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a parallel parking space.

Press the button once to search for a parking space.

Note: *You can also switch the system on after you have already driven partially or completely past a parking space. Press the active park assist button and the system informs you if you have recently passed a suitable parking space.*

When the vehicle speed is less than 22 mph (35 km/h), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: *The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.*

Note: *The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.*



Drive your vehicle approximately 3 ft (1 m) and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *If you drive your vehicle less than 2 ft (0.5 m) or greater than 5 ft (1.5 m) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.*

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: *You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.*

Note: *The system always offers the last parking space it detects. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.*

Note: *If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.*

Automatically Steering into a Parallel Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

Note: *If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (9 km/h), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.*

Note: *If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.*



When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the Active Park Assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

Note: *You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.*

Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 22 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds when searching for a parking space.
- Driving above 31 mph (50 km/h).
- Driving above 6 mph (9 km/h) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

DEALER ePROCESS

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Perpendicular Parking

The system detects available perpendicular parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a perpendicular parking space.

Press the button twice to search for a parking space.

When the vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: *The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.*

Note: *The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.*



Drive your vehicle approximately 3 ft (1 m) and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *If you drive your vehicle less than 2 ft (0.5 m) or greater than 5 ft (1.5 m) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.*

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: *You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.*

Note: *The system always offers the last detected parking space. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.*

Note: *If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 19 mph (30 km/h), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.*

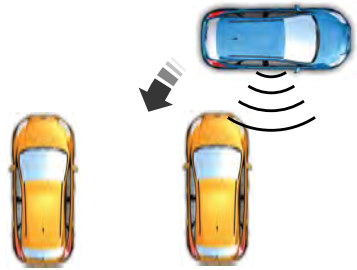
DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Automatically Steering into a Perpendicular Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

Note: *If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (9 km/h), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.*

Note: *If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.*



E186191

When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the active park assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and a message appears.

Note: *You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.*

Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 19 mph (30 km/h) for 30 seconds when searching for a parking space.
- Driving above 31 mph (50 km/h).
- Driving above 6 mph (9 km/h) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Parallel Park Out Assist

The system steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you out of a parallel parking space.

Note: *This system is not intended to assist when exiting a perpendicular parking space.*

Press the button once when your vehicle is stationary in a parallel parking space.

Note: *If you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, pressing the button once selects parallel park. You must use the information display to select park out assist.*

The system displays a message instructing you to switch a direction indicator on. Use the direction indicator to select which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

Note: *If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.*



After the system directs your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle. Generally, hand-over is when your vehicle is still inside the parking space.

Note: *Parallel Park Out Assist may not be available when the clearance to the front or the rear of your vehicle is too small.*

Note: *If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (9 km/h), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.*

Note: *You are responsible for controlling your vehicle and making sure the path is clear prior to pulling into traffic.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not search for a parking space.	You may have switched the traction control off.
	The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	The sensors may be blocked. For example, snow, ice or dirt buildup. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
	There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
	There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
	The parking space is more than 5 ft (1.5 m) or less than 2 ft (0.5 m) away.
	The vehicle speed is greater than 22 mph (35 km/h) for parallel parking or greater than 19 mph (30 km/h) for perpendicular parking.
	You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.
The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space.	Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the current transmission position. For example, rolling forward when in reverse (R).
	An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.
	Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
	The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
	A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.
	A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
	The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
	The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



The camera is on the rear cargo door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

The system uses three types of guidelines to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the rear cargo door is open, no rear view camera features will display.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

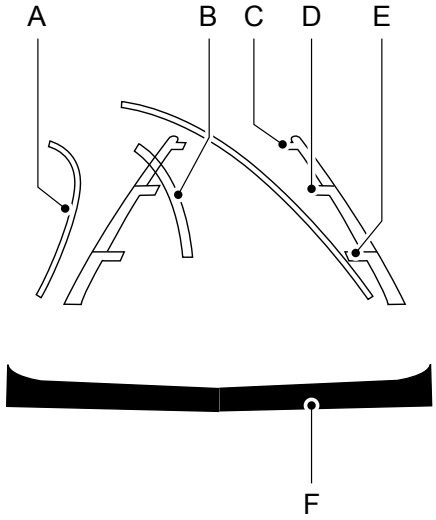
- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Camera System Settings

You can access the rear view camera system settings through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 112).

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



E142436

A Active guidelines
B Centerline
C Fixed guideline: Green zone

DEALER ePROCESS

D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone

E Fixed guideline: Red zone

F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



E190459

The system will provide an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones will highlight green, yellow and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

Manual Zoom

WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

DEALER ePROCESS

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P) (automatic transmission).
- You apply the parking brake (manual transmission).

360 DEGREE CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *You may not see objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper due to the limited coverage of the camera system.*

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras. The system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front or behind your vehicle.
- Provides cross traffic view in front and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots.
- Provides visibility around your vehicle to you in parking maneuvers such as:
  - Centering in a parking space.
  - Obstacles near vehicle.
  - Parallel parking.



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel and allows you to toggle through different camera views.

The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view with 360.
- Normal view.
- Split view.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button. When in reverse (R), only the rear images display when you press the button.

Note: *The 360 degree camera system turns off when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).*

Camera Views

A small vehicle icon displays on the top left corner of the image and illustrates which camera you are viewing. Camera views are laid out in the order the screens appear once you press the button.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The front video image disables when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).*

- **Front 360 + Normal:** Contains the normal front camera view next to a 360 degree camera view. This view appears on the screen when you press the button in any gear other than reverse (R).
- **Front Normal View:** Provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle. Access this view by pressing the camera button from the Front 360 + Normal View screen.
- **Front Split View:** Provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle. Access this view by pressing the camera button from the Front Normal View screen.
- **Rear 360 + Normal:** Contains the normal rear camera view next to a 360 degree camera view. Access this view by putting your vehicle in reverse (R), or by pressing the camera button from the Rear Split View screen.
- **Rear Normal View:** Provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle. Access this view by pressing the camera button from the Rear 360 + Normal screen.
- **Rear Split View:** Provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle. Access this view by pressing the camera button from the Rear Normal View screen.

Keep Out Zone

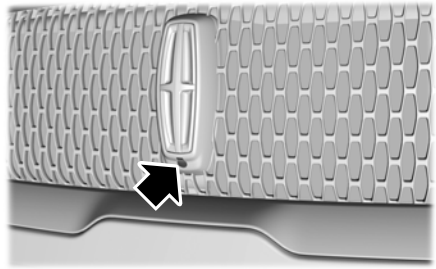


E225016

The Keep Out Zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle. It is designed to give you the indication on the ground of the fully extended outside mirror position.

Front Camera

WARNING: The front camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of your vehicle.



E250813

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

The front video camera, behind the star emblem on the grille, provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle. It adds assistance to the driver when driving forward at low speeds. To use the front video camera system, place the transmission in any gear except reverse (R). An image appears once you press the camera enable button. The area shown on the screen may vary according to your vehicle's orientation or road conditions.

Note: *Keep the star emblem free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If something is blocking the star emblem from moving, the camera may not function.*

Side Camera

The side view camera, located in the outside mirror, provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle as part of the front 360 + normal view and rear 360 + normal view. It aids you while parking your vehicle either forward or backwards.

Note: *Use caution when using the 360 view while any of the doors are ajar. A door that is ajar causes the camera to be out of position and the video image may be incorrect.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

To help the system to maintain the set speed when going downhill, downshift to a lower gear.

Your vehicle speed could decrease below the set speed when driving uphill.

Note: *The system cancels if your vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (16 km/h) under the set speed when driving uphill.*


E262918

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. A more detailed graphic is in the Steering Wheel information. See **Cruise Control** (page 83).

Switching Cruise Control On

ON Press and release the button.


The indicator appears in the information display.

Setting the Cruise Speed

Drive to your preferred speed.

SET+ Press and release to set the current speed.

SET- Press and release to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator changes color.*

Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.

SET- Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold either button to accelerate or decelerate, respectively. Release the button when you reach your preferred speed.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach your preferred speed. Press either button.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing only the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed you previously set.*

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Resuming the Set Speed

RES Press to resume the set speed.

Switching Cruise Control Off

OFF Press and release the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the adaptive cruise control when entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts or non-vehicular traffic or roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

WARNING: Adaptive cruise control may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING: Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar sensor that projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



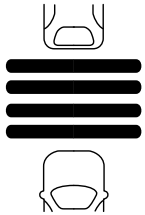
E262918

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 83).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

ON OFF Press and release the button.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

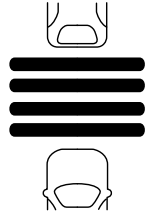
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET- Press and release the button.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

A vehicle graphic illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.

RES+ Press and release while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

The set speed adjusts to 20 mph (30 km/h).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Following a Vehicle

WARNING: When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

WARNING: Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the information display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.



If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button to follow the vehicle ahead. Or press the accelerator pedal.

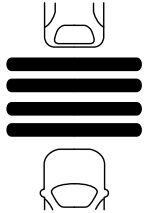
Setting the Gap Distance

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



Press and release the button to cycle through the four gap settings.

DEALER ePROCESS



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Distance Gap	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Overriding the Set Speed

WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal normally to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the vehicle graphic does not appear in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Changing the Set Speed

RES+ Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.

SET- Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold either button to change the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN Press and release the button or tap the brake pedal.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Resuming the Set Speed

RES+ Press and release the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Automatic Cancellation

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Park Brake Application

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after you stop your vehicle.
- You hold your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Note: *An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.*

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

ON OFF Press and release the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

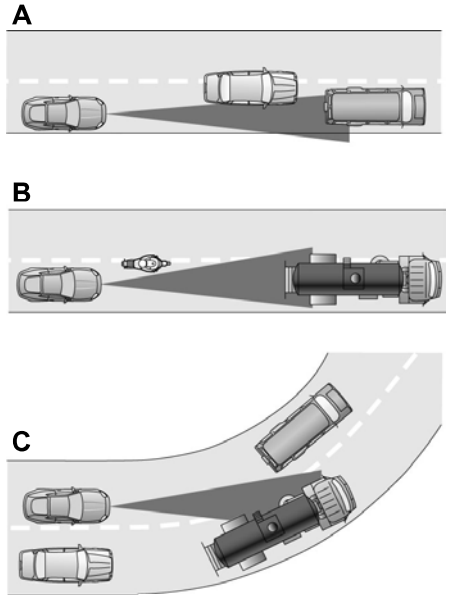
Detection Issues

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.

B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The sensor is in the lower grille.

Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

DEALER ePROCESS

Possible Causes and Actions for This Message Displaying:

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait a short time or switch to normal cruise control.
Radar is out of alignment due to a front-end impact.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that it is free from obstruction.

DEALER ePROCESS

Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors and aftermarket lights may also block the sensor.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

Using Lane Centering

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the adaptive cruise control when entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts or non-vehicular traffic or roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system is designed to help keep your vehicle in the center of the lane by applying continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center on highways.

Note: *The assistance steering torque is limited and may not be sufficient for all driving situations.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the center line.*

The system only operates when all of the following occur:

- You have adaptive cruise control with stop-and-go on.
- The system detects at least one lane marking.
- Your hands are on the steering wheel at all times.

Note: *The system may not function if the front camera or sensor is blocked or not available.*

Switching Lane Centering On and Off



Press and release the button.

The indicator appears in the information display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates the system is active and applying assistance steering torque input to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.

The system activates when it detects valid lane markings. If it does not detect valid lane markings, the system stays inactive until valid markings are available.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is not centered in the lane.
- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- You switch the direction indicator on.
- Limited steering torque input is applied.
- Areas under construction or new infrastructure.
- When modifications to the steering system have been made.
- When using a spare tire.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control.

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Automatic Cancellation

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, a tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.



If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must contribute to the steering control and press and release the button to regain full system performance.

DEALER ePROCESS

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings are crossed.

Note: *The system disables until the next key cycle if your vehicle slows down due to driver inactivity twice within a key cycle.*

Blocked Sensor

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The sensor is in the lower grille.

Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

DEALER ePROCESS

DRIVER ALERT (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

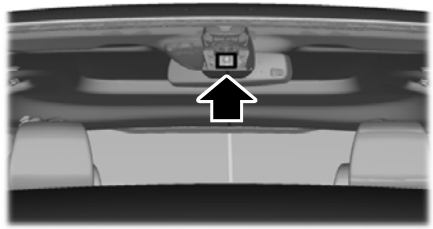
WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions. For example, bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.*



E249505

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness is reduced below a certain threshold, the system will alert you using a tone and a message in the information display.

DEALER ePROCESS

Using Driver Alert

Switching the system on and off

You may switch the system on or off through the information display. See **General Information** (page 112). When activated, the system will monitor your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: *The system does not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h).*

The warning system is in two stages. At first the system issues a temporary warning that you need to take a rest. This message will only appear for a short time. If the system detects further reduction in driving alertness, another warning may be issued which will remain in the information display for a longer time. Press OK on the steering wheel control to clear the warning

System Display

When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue a warning if required.

Note: *If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h), the system does not issue warnings.*

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

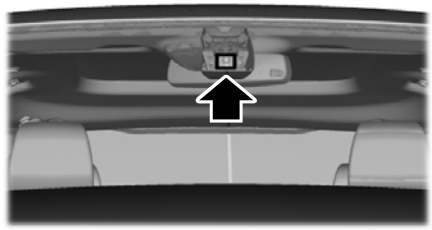
WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system works above 40 mph (64 km/h).*

Note: *The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.*

Note: *When you select aid or alert and aid mode and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.* ***The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.***

Note: *The system may not function with a blocked camera, or a damaged or dirty windshield.*



E249505

When you switch the system on and it detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur, the system notifies or assists you to stay in your lane through the steering system and information display. In Alert mode, the system provides a warning by vibrating the steering wheel. In Aid mode, the system provides steering assistance by gently counter steering your vehicle back into the lane.

When the system is functioning in the combined Alert and Aid mode, the system first provides steering assistance by gently counter steering your vehicle back into the lane, followed by a warning that vibrates the steering wheel if the vehicle is still out of the lane markings.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system stores the on or off setting until you manually change it, unless it detects a MyKey. If the system detects a MyKey, it defaults to on and the mode sets to alert.*



E132099

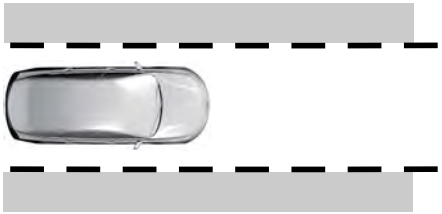
Press the button on the direction indicator stalk to switch the system on or off.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

System Settings

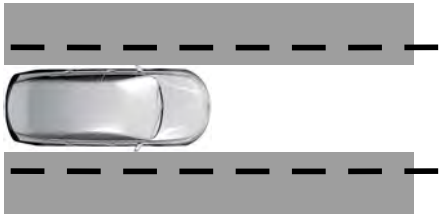
The system has two adjustable settings, Mode and Intensity. To view or adjust the settings, See **Settings** (page 481). The system stores the last known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you switch the system on.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



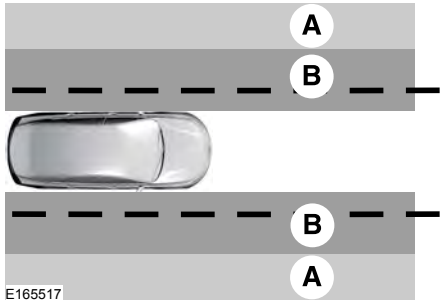
E165515

Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Aid only – Provides steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165517

A Alert

B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides steering assistance toward the lane center.

If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

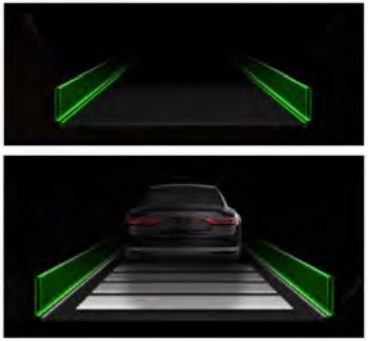
Note: *The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. **This setting does not affect the aid mode.**

- Low.
- Normal.
- High.

System Display



E272890

If you switch the system on in alert mode, a graphic with lane markings appears in the information display.

If you switch the system on in aid or alert and aid mode, walls appear instead of lane markings.

If you have adaptive cruise control enabled and you are following a vehicle, additional graphics appear in the information display.

When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.

When the system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side. This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The direction indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.
- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera becomes obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental, traffic or vehicle conditions. For example, significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog, following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane, or poor headlamp illumination.

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can become temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the direction indicator.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

- Evasive steering maneuver.
- Driving too close to the lane markings.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Your vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature.
The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
A quick, intentional lane change has occurred.
Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings.
Driving at high speeds in curves.
The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
Sudden offset in lane markings.
ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa.
There is standing water on the road.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Faint lane markings, for example partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
The camera has not been calibrated after a windshield replacement.
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?
High cross winds are present.
There is a large road crown.
Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
The tires have been changed, or the suspension has been modified.

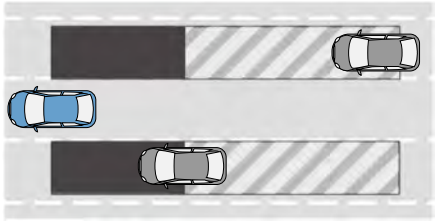
DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



E255695

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 59 ft (18 m) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 mph (48 km/h) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Using the Blind Spot Information System

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

System Lights and Messages

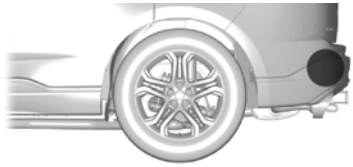


E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 118). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 118).

Switching the System On and Off

You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 112). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

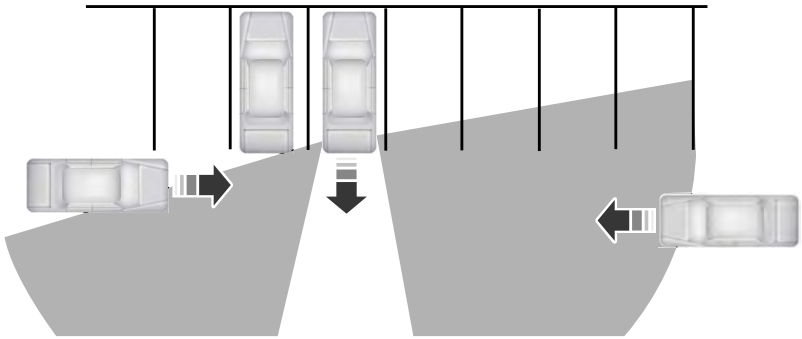
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides when you shift into reverse (R).

Using the Cross Traffic Alert System

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 37 mph (60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).

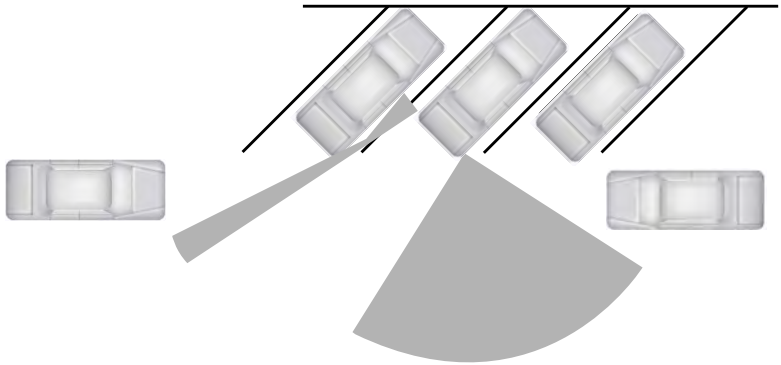
DEALER ePROCESS



E142440

The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.

DEALER ePROCESS



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

DEALER ePROCESS

System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts



E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing in the distance.*

Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R). See **Information Messages** (page 118).

System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

System Errors

If the system detects a fault a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 118).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the system off using the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 118). When you switch system off, a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 118).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on and you shift into reverse (R). If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

Steering Tips

Steering wander or pull could be caused by any of the following:

- Incorrect tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Crowned road surface.
- High crosswind.

If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DEALER ePROCESS

Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

Adaptive Steering (If Equipped)

Note: *The adaptive steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected a message displays in the information display. If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. The message may clear if the fault is no longer present. If an adaptive steering system warning message appears each time you start your vehicle, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

The adaptive steering system continually changes the steering ratio with changes to vehicle speed, optimizing the steering response in all conditions.

The adaptive steering system is designed with a locking device. While the lock is engaged, your vehicle returns to a fixed steering ratio. You may also notice a sound when you start or turn off your vehicle as the lock is disengaged or engaged. If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a fault while you are driving, the lock engages and you are able to continue steering. During this time it is possible that the steering wheel may not be straight when the vehicle is driving straight ahead. During this time you may notice that the steering wheel angle required to steer the vehicle may be different. Extreme operating conditions may also cause the lock to engage. This strategy prevents overheating and permanent damage to the adaptive steering system. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

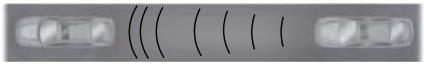
WARNING: The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

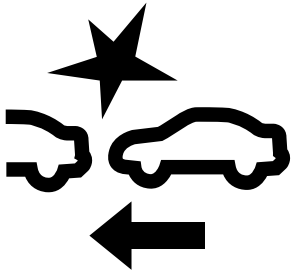
The system is active at speeds above approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality:

1. Alert
2. Brake Support
3. Active Braking



E255268

Alert: When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake Support: The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. Brake support does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

DEALER ePROCESS

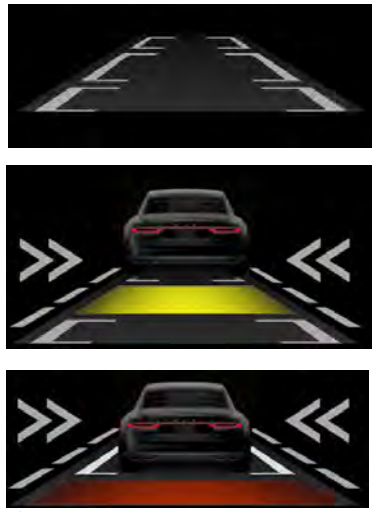
Active Braking: Active braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help the driver reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

Note: *Brake Support and Active Braking are active at speeds up to 75 mph (120 km/h). If the vehicle has a radar sensor, included with Adaptive Cruise Control, then Brake Support and Active Braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.*

Note: *If you perceive Pre-Collision Assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.*

Distance Indication and Alert (If Equipped)

Distance Indication and Alert is a function that provides the driver with a graphical indication of the time gap to other preceding vehicles traveling in the same direction. The Distance Indication and Alert screen in the display screen shows one of the graphics that follow.



E254797

If the time gap to a preceding vehicle is small, a red visual indication displays to the driver.

Note: *Distance Indication and Alert deactivates and the graphics do not display when Adaptive Cruise Control is active.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Speed	Sensitivity	Graphics	Distance Gap	Time Gap
62 mph (100 km/h)	Normal	Grey	>82 ft (25 m)	>0.9sec
62 mph (100 km/h)	Normal	Yellow	56–82 ft (17–25 m)	0.6sec - 0.9sec
62 mph (100 km/h)	Normal	Red	<56 ft (17 m)	<0.6sec

Evasive Steer Assist (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a stationary vehicle or a vehicle traveling in the same direction as your vehicle, the system is designed to help you steer around the vehicle.

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- The Pre-Collision Assist system detects a vehicle ahead and starts to apply Active Braking.
- You turn the steering wheel in an attempt to steer around the vehicle.

After you turn the steering wheel, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the vehicle. After you pass the vehicle, the system applies steering torque in the opposite direction to encourage you to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the vehicle.

Note: *The system does not automatically steer around a vehicle. If you do not turn the steering wheel, the system does not activate.*

Note: *The system does not activate if the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small and a crash cannot be avoided.*

Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

The following settings can be adjusted by using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 112).

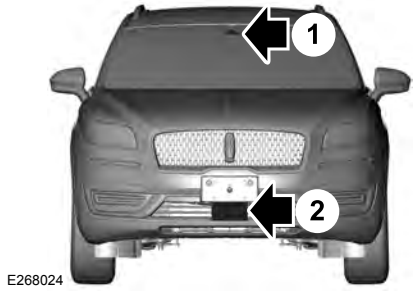
- You can change Alert and Distance Alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- You can switch Distance Indication and Alert on or off.
- If required, you can switch Active Braking on or off.
- If required, you can switch Evasive Steer Assist on or off.

Note: *Active Braking and Evasive Steering Assist automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *If you switch Active Braking off, Evasive Steering Assist turns off.*

Blocked Sensors



1 Camera.
2 Radar sensor (if equipped).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, the radar signals or camera images are obstructed. If your vehicle has a radar sensor, it is located behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the Pre-Collision Assist system may not function or performance may reduce. The following table lists possible causes and actions for when this message displays.

Camera Troubleshooting

Cause	Action
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display screen.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display screen.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist automatically reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Swirling water or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist automatically reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Note: *Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.*

Note: *If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false detections. Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.*

DEALER ePROCESS

DRIVE CONTROL

LINCOLN DRIVE CONTROL

The system delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems continuously monitor your driving inputs and the road conditions to optimize ride comfort, steering, handling, powertrain response and sound. You can preset your preferences for these systems within the information display. The system responds to your preferences based on what gear position you select. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Lincoln Drive Control consists of the following systems:

- Continuously controlled damping dynamically adjusts the shock absorbers stiffness in real time to match the road surface and driver inputs. This system continuously monitors your vehicle's motion, suspension position, load, speed, road conditions and steering to adjust the suspension damping for optimal vehicle control.
- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your vehicle speed and your inputs.
- Adaptive steering optimizes your vehicle's steering response based on your steering wheel input, changes in vehicle speed and other conditions.
- Active noise control utilizes your vehicle electronics to enhance the acoustic experience.
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving.
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your inputs.

Using Lincoln Drive Control

You can configure which of the Drive Control modes are active when your vehicle is in drive (D) or in sport (S). The configuration remains active until modified from the main menu on the information display.

DEALER ePROCESS

These systems have a range of modes which you can choose from to customize your ideal driving experience:

- ***Comfort*** – Provides a more relaxed driving experience, maximizing comfort. Your steering effort decreases and the suspension movement is more fluid. Comfort mode is ideal when you desire enhanced traveling comfort.
- ***Normal*** – Delivers a balanced combination of comfortable, controlled ride and confident handling. This mode provides an engaging driving experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from a luxury vehicle.
- ***Sport*** – Provides a sportier driving experience. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The engine responds more directly to your inputs and takes on a more powerful tone. This mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.

You can change the drive control settings in the information display. See **General Information** (page 112).

Note: *Not all settings may be available.*

Note: *Lincoln Drive Control has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain types of system errors gray out the mode selections within the information display, preventing you from changing states when the gear position is changed. Other types of errors produce a temporary message in the information display. If either condition persists for multiple key cycles, see an authorized dealer.*

EcoCoach

The system is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently. See **Economical Driving** (page 279).

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. See **Fuel Consumption** (page 183).*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

EcoCoach System Display

You can view the instantaneous efficiency level or the trip summary in the information display.

Instantaneous Efficiency Level

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

Use the information display controls to view the instantaneous efficiency level. See **General Information** (page 112).

Trip Summary

The calculated trip summary is shown as four colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

Use the information display controls to view the trip summary. See **General Information** (page 112).

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

Cargo Management System



E201718

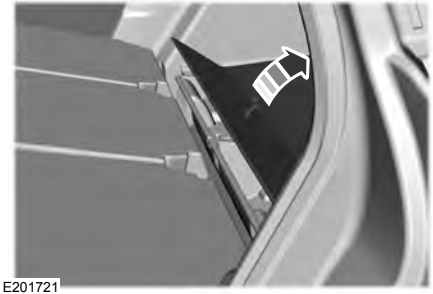
The system is in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.



E201719

Your vehicle may have an additional cover that you can remove to access the spare tire or tire mobility kit.

In-Floor Storage - Second Row



E201721

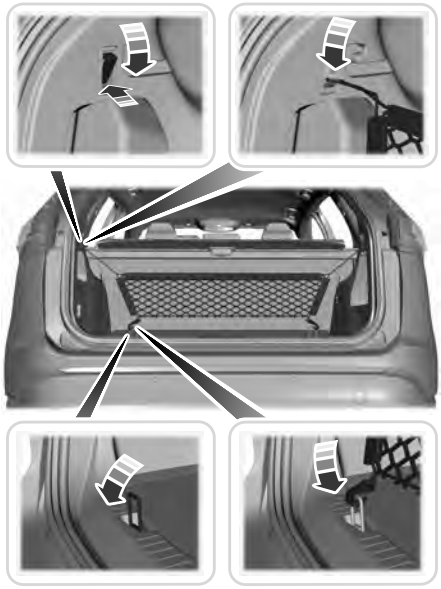
In-floor storage is behind the second row of seats in the cargo area. Lift the lid to open.

CARGO NETS

WARNING: This net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

DEALER ePROCESS

The cargo net secures lightweight objects in the cargo area. Attach the net to the anchors provided. Repeat the attachment on both sides of the vehicle.



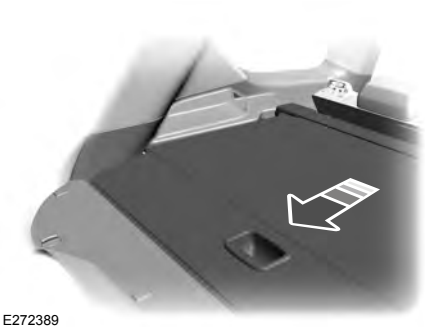
E199571

LUGGAGE COVERS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Use the luggage cover to enclose items in the rear storage area of your vehicle.

Operating the Luggage Cover

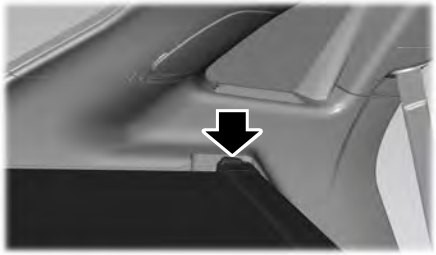


E272389

1. Using the handle, pull the cover straight back until it locks.
2. To release the cover, tap the center of the board by the pull handle. Once tapped, the cover disengages.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Installing the Luggage Cover

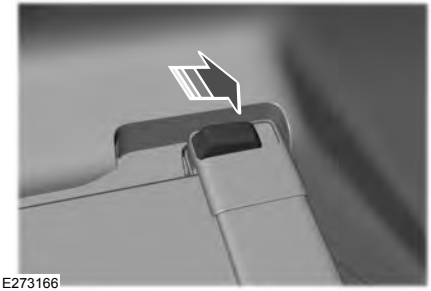


E273165

The luggage cover cassette attaches to the rear quarter trim panel.

1. Load the cassette into the rear quarter trim from the top down.
2. Push the cassette down, the click indicates the luggage cover is properly installed.

Removing the Luggage Cover



E273166

1. To release the cassette from the rear quarter trim panel, slide the button forward as indicated by the arrow.
2. After sliding the button forward, lift the cassette up.

Note: *There are buttons on both sides of the cassette.*

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack, is 100 lb (45 kg).

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

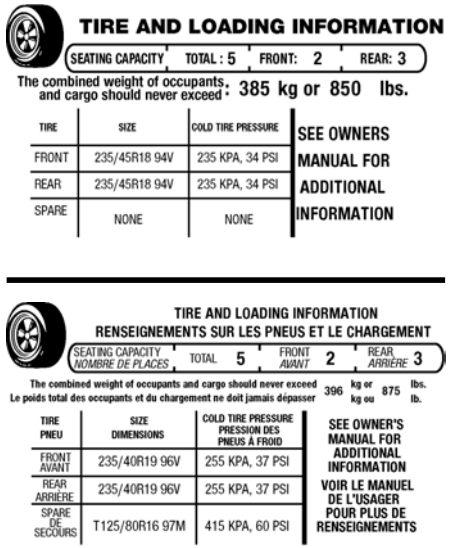
Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

LOAD LIMIT

Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section guides you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer, or both. Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

Tire and Loading Label Information Example:



E198719

DEALER ePROCESS

Payload

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb” for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

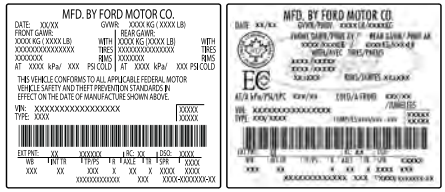
The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



E198828

DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)

GCWR is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

Note: *For trailer towing information refer to the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer.*

WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (5 x 99 kilograms) - (5 x 13.5 kilograms) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 -

DEALER ePROCESS

198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

WARNING: Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: *Your vehicle may have electrical items, such as fuses or relays, related to towing. See* ***Fuses*** *(page 297).*

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 267).

You can also find information in the **RV & Trailer Towing Guide** available at your authorized dealer, or online.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

RV & Trailer Towing Guide Online	
Website	http://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

This feature applies your vehicle brakes at individual wheels and, if necessary, reduces engine power. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control light flashes and the message **TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED** appears in the information display. The first thing to do is slow your vehicle down, then pull safely to the side of the road and check for proper tongue load and trailer load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 264).

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Note: *Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.*

Note: *Make sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area. Do not exceed 20 ft^2 (1.86 m^2) for vehicles without towing package, or 30 ft^2 (2.79 m^2) for vehicles with towing package.*

Note: *For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) starting at the 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation point.*

Note: *Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to activate electric trailer brakes.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart.

Powertrain	Maximum Trailer Weight[1]
2.0L [2]	1,500 lb (680 kg)
2.0L [3]	3,500 lb (1,587 kg)
2.7L [2]	2,000 lb (907 kg)
2.7L [3]	3,500 lb (1,587 kg)

[1] Calculated with SAE J2807 method.

[2] Vehicle without towing package.

[3] Vehicle with towing package.

DEALER ePROCESS

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

You can find information on load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label as well as instructions on calculating your vehicle's load in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 267).

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

Safety Chains

Note: *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

WARNING: Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 1500 lb (680 kg) when load.

Trailer Lamps

WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:

1. Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
2. Set your vehicle parking brake.
3. Place the transmission in park (P).
4. Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. Chocks are not included with your vehicle.

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Note: *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer **before** backing the trailer into the water.*

Note: *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer **after** removing the trailer from the water.*

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

DEALER ePROCESS

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime you submerge the rear axle in water. Water may contaminate the rear axle lubricant, which is not a normal maintenance inspection item unless there is a possibility of a leak or other axle repair is required.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - 2.0L

Emergency Towing

WARNING: If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Refer to the Manual Park Release procedure. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 188). Failing to do so may result in damage to the transmission.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Recreational Towing

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage may occur. We recommend towing your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - 2.7L

Emergency Towing

WARNING: If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Refer to the Manual Park Release procedure. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 188). Failing to do so may result in damage to the transmission.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Recreational Towing

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See* ***Climate Control*** *(page 138).*

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. We designed these guidelines to prevent damage to your transmission.

You can recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground using the Manual Park Release procedure, or with all four wheels off the ground using a vehicle transport trailer. If you are using a vehicle transport trailer, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

If you recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground:

- Only tow your vehicle in the forward direction.
- Refer to the Manual Park Release procedure. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 188). Failing to do so may result in damage to the transmission.
- Do not exceed 65 mph (105 km/h).

DEALER ePROCESS

BREAKING-IN

Tires

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 mi (500 km). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 mi (150 km) in town and for the first 1,000 mi (1,500 km) on freeways.

Engine

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,000 mi (1,500 km). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 105).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine continues to operate with limited power for a short period of time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine reduces. The air conditioning switches off and the engine cooling fan operates continually.

1. Gradually reduce your speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Immediately switch the engine off to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 323).
5. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.

DEALER ePROCESS

- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving (When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home).
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds.
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may want to avoid doing because they reduce your fuel economy:

- Avoid sudden or hard accelerations.
- Avoid revving the engine before turning off the car.
- Avoid long idle periods.
- Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Reduce the use of air conditioning and heat.
- Avoid using speed control in hilly terrain.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight.
- Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING: Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.


E259345

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

DEALER ePROCESS

FLOOR MATS

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.


E142666

To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Lincoln Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:

- Throughout the life of the vehicle for original owners.
- For six years or 70,000 mi (110,000 km) (whichever comes first) for subsequent owners.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the client's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2 gal (8 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (20 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall tow Lincoln eligible vehicles to the client's selling or preferred dealer within 100 mi (160 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest Lincoln dealer. If a client requests a tow to a selling or preferred dealer that is more than 100 mi (160 km) from the disablement location, the client is responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 100 mi (160 km).
- Roadside Assistance includes up to $200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

United States clients who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-521-4140.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Lincoln Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest Lincoln dealership within 100 mi (160 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States clients, call 1-800-521-4140. Clients need to submit their original receipts.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Lincoln Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, beginning from the original warranty start date and lasts the life of the vehicle for the original owner. Subsequent owners receive coverage that is concurrent with the 6 years or 70,000 mi (110,000 km) (whichever occurs first) powertrain warranty coverage period.

Note: *Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.*

For complete program coverage details, review your warranty guide, contact your dealer, call us in Canada at 1-800-387-9333, or visit our website at www.lincolncanada.com.

If you purchased your vehicle in Canada and require roadside assistance, please call 1-800-387-9333 or contact Roadside Assistance using the Lincoln Way mobile app.

Note: *For quick reference, complete the roadside assistance identification card found in the glove compartment of your vehicle and place it in your wallet.*

HAZARD FLASHERS

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery loses charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The flasher control is on the instrument panel. Use your hazard flashers when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the button again to switch them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once the vehicle determines the systems are safe, then the vehicle allows you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact a qualified technician.*

DEALER ePROCESS

The fuel pump shutoff stops the flow of fuel to the engine in the event of a moderate to severe crash. Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a crash, you may restart your vehicle.

1. Press ***START/STOP*** to switch off your vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and ***START/STOP*** to switch on your vehicle.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press ***START/STOP*** to switch off your vehicle.
4. You can attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and ***START/STOP***, or press ***START/STOP*** without pressing the brake pedal.
5. If the vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1 through 4.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle.

Note: *Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

DEALER ePROCESS

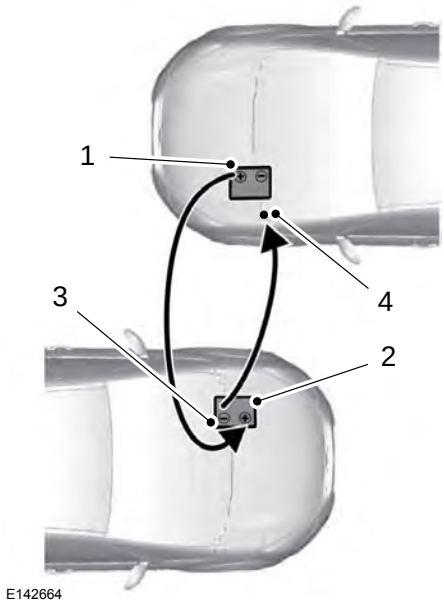
Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING: Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables.

WARNING: Do not attach the end of the positive cable to the studs or L-shaped eyelet located above the positive (+) terminal of your vehicle's battery. High current may flow through and cause damage to the fuses.

WARNING: Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.

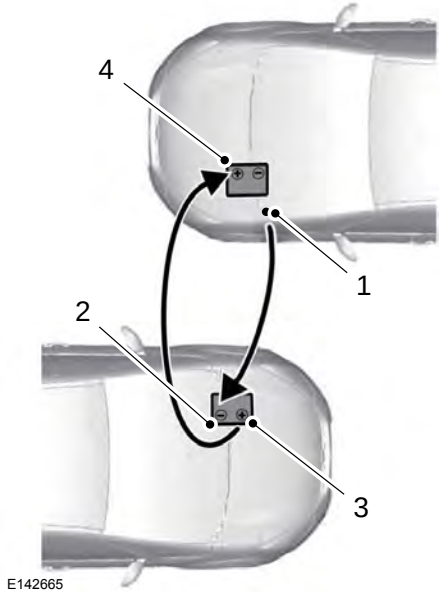
Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

DEALER ePROCESS

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

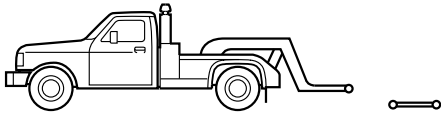
The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

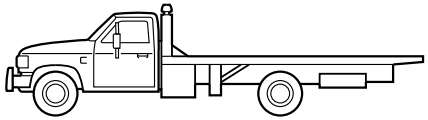
The horn and indicators turn off when:

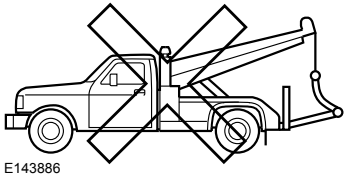
- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.
- Sounding of the horn is only enabled in specific markets.

DEALER ePROCESS

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







E143886

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. If you tow your vehicle incorrectly, or by any other means, vehicle damage may occur.

We produce a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

Towing an all-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, all-wheel or four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer or a flatbed transport vehicle, you can flat-tow with all wheels on the ground under limited conditions. See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 277).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line provides warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs are made using Lincoln or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Lincoln.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Lincoln Client Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Lincoln Motor Company
Client Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48126

Telephone

1-800-521-4140
TDD for the hearing impaired:
1-800-232-5952

Web Address
www.LincolnOwner.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- United States dealer locator by Dealer Name, City, State or ZIP Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Lincoln Extended Service Plans.
- Lincoln Original Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Lincoln Client Relationship Centre
Lincoln Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6K 1C8

Telephone

1-800-387-9333

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Web Address
www.LincolnCanada.com

Online Resources

Twitter English

@LincolnMotorCA

Twitter French

@LincolnQC

Instagram

@LincolnMotorCA

Facebook

/LincolnMotorCA

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Lincoln Motor Company policies, please contact the Lincoln Client Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Client Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states, you must directly notify Lincoln in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Lincoln is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 mi (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

DEALER ePROCESS

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

Note: *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel or petrol/gas engines or the proper sulfur fuel for diesel engines.

If you cannot find the proper fuel recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of improper fuels in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using improper fuels may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands and/or Puerto Rico, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel and the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact the corresponding Ford Customer Assistance Center:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY

Customer Relationship Centers in:

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Customer Relationship Center	Phone	Fax	E-mail
Asia Pacific	N/A	N/A	apemcrc@ford.com
Caribbean and Central America	+1 313 594 4857	-	expcac@ford.com
Middle East	Ford 80004443673	971 4 3327 266	menacac@ford.com
	Lincoln 80004441067		
	UAE 80004441066		
	Saudi Arabia 8008443673		
	Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi 800850078		
	Kuwait 22280384		
North Africa	N/A	N/A	nafcrc@ford.com

DEALER ePROCESS

Customer Relationship Center	Phone	Fax	E-mail
Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands	+1-800-841-3673	N/A	prcac@ford.com
Sub-Saharan Africa	N/A	N/A	ssacrc@ford.com
South Korea	+82-02-1600-6003	N/A	infokr1@ford.com or infokr@lincoln.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Global Trade Services by emailing, expcso@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

DEALER ePROCESS

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website	http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/reporting-defects-motor-vehicles.html (English)
Website	http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/signaler-defauts-vehicules-automobiles.html (French)
Phone	1–800–333–0510

DEALER ePROCESS

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.ford.ca
Phone	1–800–565-3673

DEALER ePROCESS

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Power Distribution Box

WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

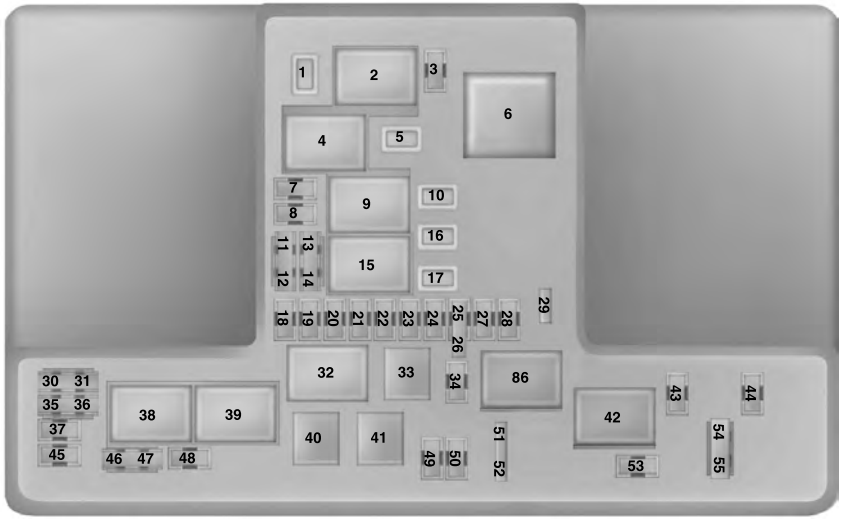
WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If you disconnect or reconnect the battery, some features need to be reset. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 329).

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-



E190797

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
1	30A[1]	Second row power seat.
2	—	Starter relay.
3	15A[2]	Rear wiper. Rain sensor Rear wash relay coil.
4	—	Blower motor relay.
5	20A[1]	Power point 3 - console bin.
6	—	Not used.
7	20A[2]	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 1.
8	20A[2]	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 2.
9	—	Powertrain control module relay.
10	20A[1]	Power point 5-main bin.
11	15A[3]	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 4.
12	15A[3]	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 3.

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
13	—	Not used.
14	—	Not used.
15	—	Run-start relay.
16	20A[1]	Power point 2 - back of console.
17	20A[1]	Power point 4 - luggage compartment.
18	20A[2]	Not used (spare).
19	10A[2]	Run-start electronic power assist steering.
20	10A[2]	Run/start lighting.
21	15A[2]	Not used (spare).
22	10A[2]	Air conditioner clutch solenoid.
23	15A[2]	Front split view camera. Rear view camera. 360 camera module. Blind spot information system. Voltage quality module (start/stop).

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
24	10A[2]	Not used (spare).
25	10A[3]	Run-start anti-lock brake system.
26	10A[3]	Run-start powertrain control module.
27	5A[2]	Not used (spare).
28	10A[2]	Rear washer pump.
29	5A[2]	Not used (spare).
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	—	Electronic fan 1 relay.
33	—	A/C clutch relay.
34	15A[2]	Glove box release.
35	—	Not used.
36	—	Not used.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
37	10A[2]	Transfer case cooling fan.
38	—	Electronic fan 2 relay.
39	—	Electronic fan 3 relay.
40	—	Horn relay.
41	—	Not used.
42	—	Fuel pump relay.
43	15A[2]	Right high beam and stop lamp.
44	20A[2]	Not used (spare).
45	—	Not used.
46	—	Not used.
47	—	Not used.
48	15A[2]	Left high beam and stop lamp.
49	—	Not used.
50	20A[2]	Horn.

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Not used.
53	10A [2]	Massaging seats.
54	10A [3]	Brake on off switch.
55	10A [3]	Alternator A-line.
86	—	Not used.

[1] M case fuse.

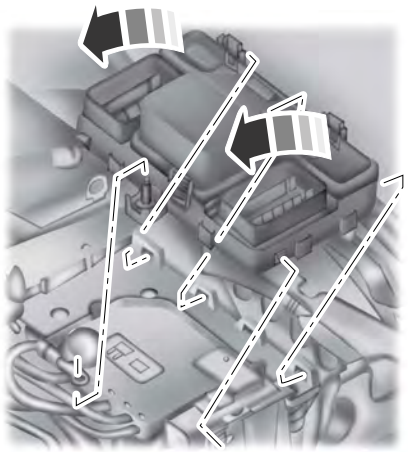
[2] Micro 2 fuse.

[3] Micro 3 fuse.

Power Distribution Box - Bottom

There are fuses on the bottom of the fuse box. To access the bottom of the fuse box, do the following:

DEALER ePROCESS

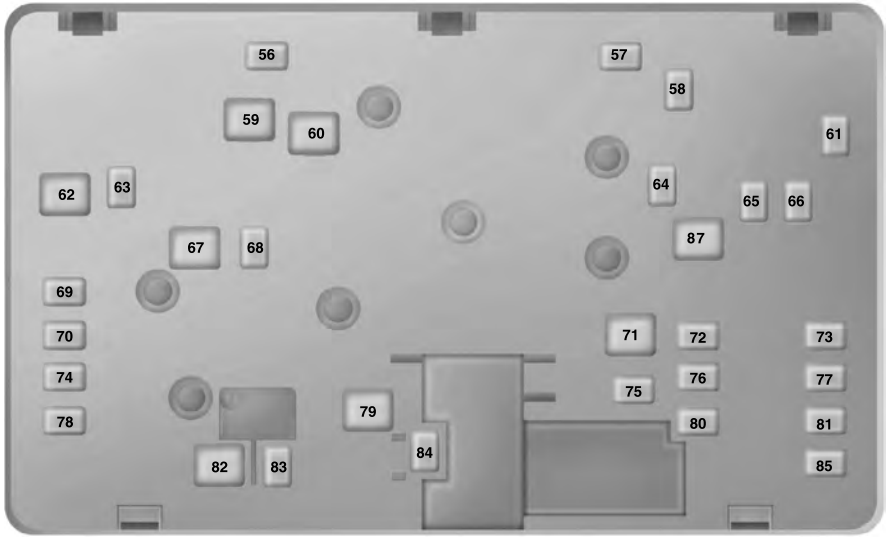


E145983

1. Release the two latches on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the inboard side of the fuse box from the cradle.
3. Move the fuse box toward the center of the engine compartment.
4. Pivot the outermost side of the fuse box to access the bottom side.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-



E190798

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
56	—	Not used.
57	20A[1]	Not used (spare).
58	30A[1]	Fuel pump feed.
59	40A[2]	Electronic fan 3.
60	40A[2]	Electronic fan 1.
61	—	Not used.
62	50A[2]	Body control module 1.
63	25A[1]	Electronic fan 2.
64	20A[1]	Not used (spare).
65	20A[1]	Front heated seat.
66	15A[1]	Heated wiper park.
67	50A[2]	Body control module 2.

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
68	40A[1]	Heated rear window.
69	30A[1]	Anti-lock brake system valves.
70	30A[1]	Passenger seat.
71	–	Not used.
72	20A[1]	Not used (spare).
73	20A[1]	Rear heated seats.
74	30A[1]	Driver seat module.
75	25A[1]	Wiper motor.
76	30A[1]	Power liftgate module.
77	30A[1]	Climate control seat module.
78	40A[1]	Trailer tow.
79	40A[2]	Blower motor.

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
80	25A[1]	Not used (spare).
81	40A[1]	110 volt inverter.
82	–	Not used.
83	20A[1]	Not used (spare).
84	30A[1]	Starter solenoid.
85	30A[1]	Not used (spare).
87	60A[2]	Anti-lock brake system pump.

[1] M case fuse.

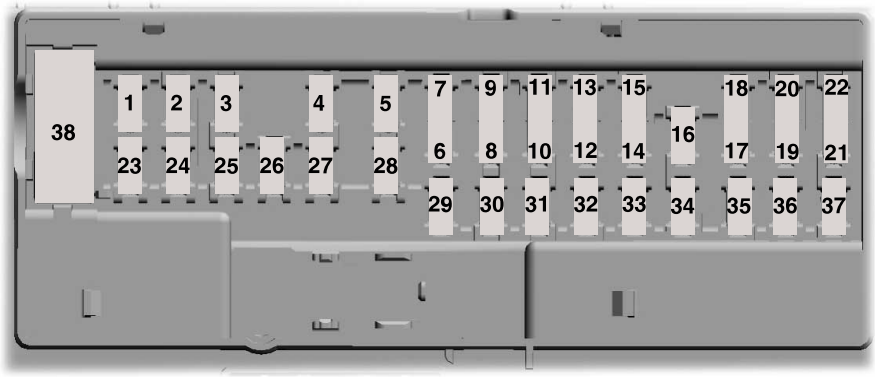
[2] J case fuse.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering column.

Note: *It may be easier to access the fuse panel if you remove the finish trim piece.*

DEALER ePROCESS



E145984

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
1	–	Not used.
2	7.5A [1]	Memory seats. Lumbar. Wireless accessory charging.
3	20A [1]	Driver door unlock.

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
4	5A [1]	Not used (spare).
5	20A [1]	Subwoofer amplifier.
6	10A [2]	USB charger.
7	10A [2]	Not used (spare).
8	10A [2]	Security horn relay.
9	10A [2]	Rear seat entertainment system module.
10	5A [2]	Keypad. Power liftgate module. Hands free liftgate module. Embedded Modem.
11	5A [2]	Combined sensing module.
12	7.5A [2]	Electronic control panel. Gearshift module.
13	7.5A [2]	Cluster. Steering column control module. Smart datalink connector (gateway) module.

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
14	10A [2]	Extended power module - power.
15	10A [2]	Smart datalink connector (SDLC) power (OBD connector).
16	15A [1]	Not used (spare).
17	5A [2]	Not used (spare).
18	5A [2]	Not used (spare).
19	7.5A [2]	Extended power module - Run/Start.
20	7.5A [2]	Headlamp control module.
21	5A [2]	Humidity sensor.
22	5A [2]	Not used (spare).
23	10A [1]	Delayed accessory (power inverter logic, moonroof logic, driver window switch power).
24	20A [1]	Central lock/unlock.
25	30A [1]	Driver door (window, mirror). Driver door module.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
		Driver door lock indicator. Driver lock switch illumination.
26	30A [1]	Front passenger door (window, mirror). Front passenger door module. Front passenger lock indicator. Front passenger switch illumination (window, lock).
27	30A [1]	Moonroof.
28	20A [1]	Amplifier.
29	30A [1]	Rear driver side door smart window.
30	30A [1]	Rear passenger side door smart window.
31	15A [1]	Not used (spare).
32	10A [1]	Sync 3 module. Radio transceiver module.
33	20A [1]	Radio.
34	30A [1]	Run-start bus (fuse 19, 20, 21, 22, 35, 36, 37, circuit breaker 38).

DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
35	5A [1]	Not used (spare).
36	15A [1]	Auto-dimming rear view mirror. Automatic high beam and lane departure mirror module. Rear heated seat module. Suspension module.
37	20A [1]	Active front steering. Heated steering wheel module.
38	-	Not used.

[1] Micro 2 fuse.

[2] Micro 3 fuse.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

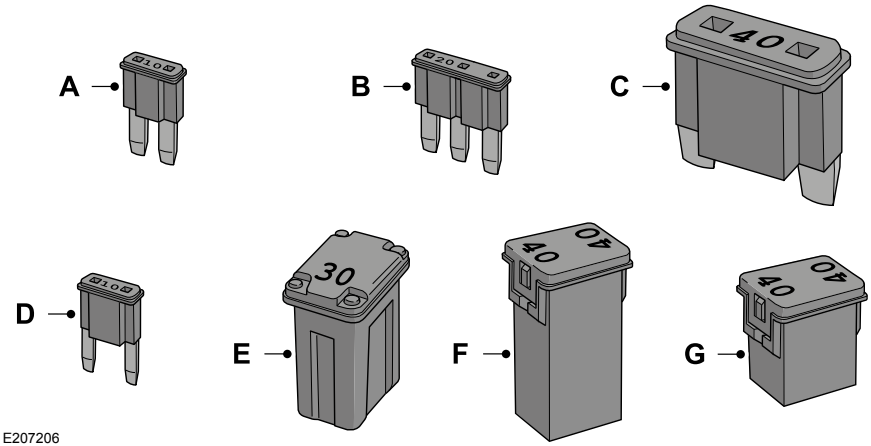


E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Fuse Types



Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi

DEALER ePROCESS

Callout	Fuse Type
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

DEALER ePROCESS

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

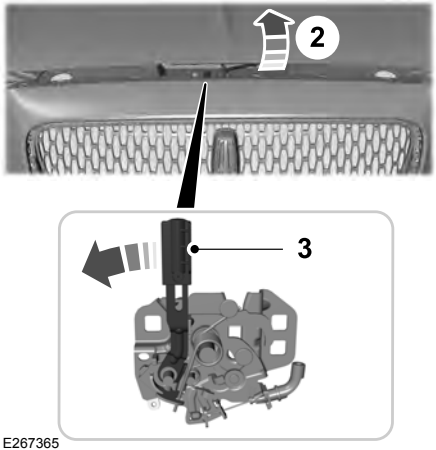
Opening the Hood



E142457

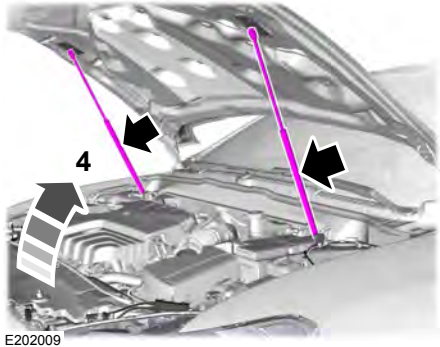
1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E267365

2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.



E202009

4. Open the hood. The hood struts automatically supports the hood.

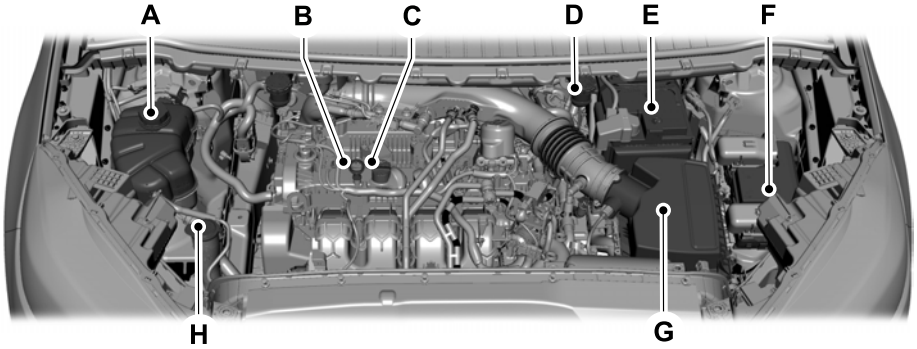
Closing the Hood

1. Lower the hood until it engages on to the secondary latch.
2. Firmly push down on the front of the hood to close it fully.

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L



A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 323).
B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 321).
C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 321).
D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 328).
E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 329).
F Power distribution box. See **Changing a Fuse** (page 313).

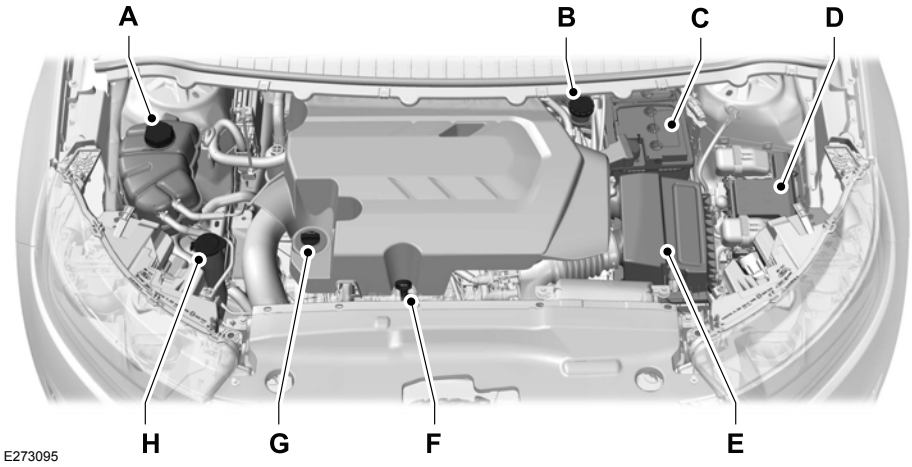
DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

G Air filter. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 334).

H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 329).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.7L



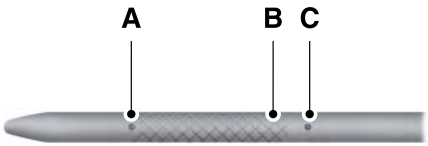
DEP DEALER ePROCESS

A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 323).
B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 328).
C Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 329).
D Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 297).
E Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 335).
F Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 321).
G Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 321).
H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 329).

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

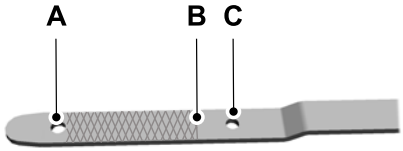
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L



E270482

A	Minimum.
B	Nominal.
C	Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.7L



E250320

A	Minimum.
B	Nominal.
C	Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, do the following:

1. Make sure the parking brake is on. Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
3. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
4. Switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan. Checking the engine oil level too soon after you switch the engine off may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 316).
6. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 319).
7. Reinstall the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 319).
8. Make sure that the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 400).
9. If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Do not remove the dipstick when the engine is running.*

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).*

Adding Engine Oil

WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

To top up the engine oil level do the following:

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 319). Turn it counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 400). You may have to use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
4. Recheck the oil level.
5. If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
6. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Make sure you install the oil filler cap correctly.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change indicator.

DEALER ePROCESS

From the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and description
Settings	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Vehicle	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Oil Life	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Hold OK to Reset	Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the instrument cluster displays the following message. Reset Successful
	When the oil change indicator resets the instrument cluster displays 100%. Remaining Life {00}%
	If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages, repeat the process. Not Reset Reset Cancelled

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 524).

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29°F (-34°C) and -35°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant

WARNING: Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Note: *Dispose of used coolant in the appropriate manner.*

Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388).

Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

DEALER ePROCESS

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)

WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

DEALER ePROCESS

2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK (IF EQUIPPED)

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 524). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: A fluid level between the ***MAX*** and ***MIN*** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

DEALER ePROCESS



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388).

WASHER FLUID CHECK

WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 41.0°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Note: *The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

Your vehicle is fitted with a Motorcraft maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water.

When a battery replacement is required, you must use a recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle has a battery cover, after cleaning or replacing the battery, make sure you reinstall it.*

Note: *See an authorized dealer for battery access, testing, or replacement.*

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it may adversely affect battery performance and durability. This may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically-controlled by a computer, some engine control settings are maintained by power from the battery. Some engine computer settings, like the idle trim and fuel trim strategy, optimize the driveability and performance of the engine. The clock and radio station presets are also maintained in memory by power from the low-voltage battery. These settings are erased when a technician disconnects and connects the low-voltage battery.

To restore the settings, do the following:

Note: *Until you switch the ignition to the on position, you will receive a message in your information display stating that your vehicle is not in park.*

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Switch off all accessories.
4. Press the brake pedal and start your vehicle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

5. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature. While the engine is warming up, complete the following: Reset the clock. See **Audio Unit** (page 411). Reset the power windows bounce-back feature. See **Power Windows** (page 99). Reset the radio station presets. See **Audio Unit** (page 411).
6. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
7. Drive the vehicle at least 10 mi (16 km) to completely relearn the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.

Note: *If you do not allow the engine to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the engine computer eventually relearns the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Note: *Certain features may not operate if the battery monitor system is not reset with a scan tool following a jump start or battery replacement. Normal electrical accessory operation should resume after your vehicle is left undisturbed for 8 hours.*

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

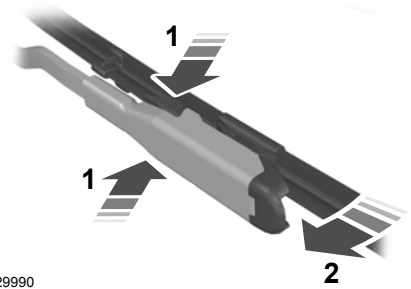
CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Clean the wiper blades and the windshield to improve wiper performance.

Note: *Do not move the wiper arm when the ignition is on as it may cause damage to the wiper motor.*

Replace the wiper blades at least annually for optimum performance.

Front Wiper Blades



E129990

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

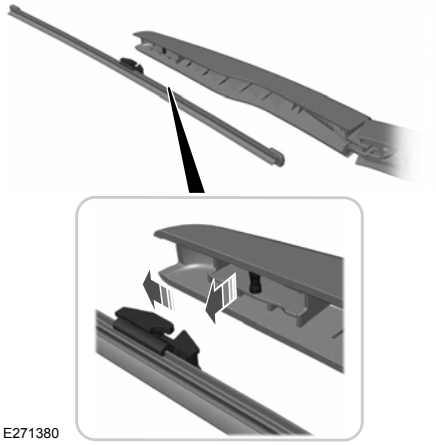
Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Rear Window Wiper Blade



E271380

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

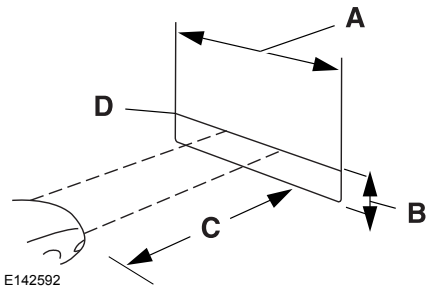
ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the aim of the headlamp beam checked by an authorized dealer.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Headlamp Aiming Target



E142592

A 8 feet (2.4 meters).

B Center height of lamp to ground.

C 25 feet (7.6 meters).

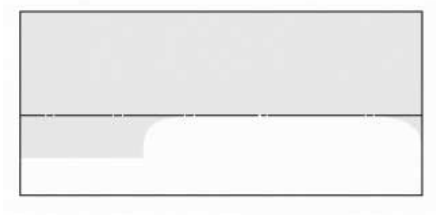
D Horizontal reference line.

Vertical Aim Adjustment Procedure

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

Note: *To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.*

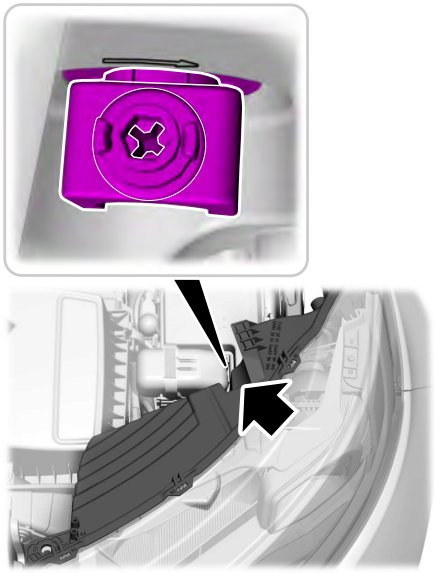
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



E142465

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.

DEALER ePROCESS



E194757

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

CHANGING A BULB

LED Lamps

LED lamps are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

The following lamps are LED:

- Front parking lamps.
- Front side marker lamps.
- Front signature lamps.
- Daytime running lamps.
- Side direction indicators.
- Rear side marker lamps.
- Brake and rear lamps.
- Central high mounted brake lamp.
- Rear direction indicators.
- Reversing lamps.
- License plate lamp.
- Turn indicator.
- Low beam.
- High beam.
- Fog lamps.

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.0L

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

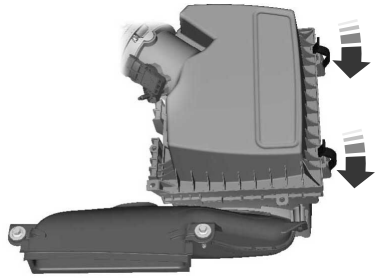
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388).

DEALER ePROCESS

For Turbocharged equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 524).

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.*



E144365

1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.
6. Install the air filter housing cover.
7. Engage the clamps to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.7L

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

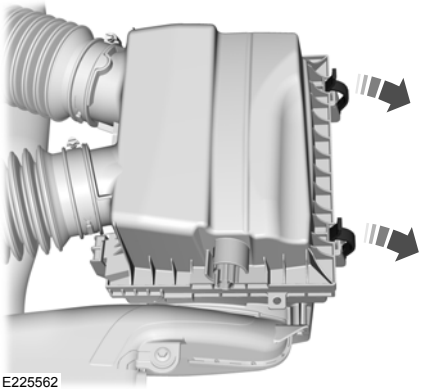
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

For Turbocharged equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 524).

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.*


E225562

1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.
6. Install the air filter housing cover.
7. Engage the clamps to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING PRODUCTS

Materials

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover, ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner, ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash, ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser, ZC-20 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P3-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo, CXC-66-A (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner, ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner, CXC-101 (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant, ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid, CXC-37-A/B/D/F (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner, ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner, CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover, ZC-14 (U.S.)	
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner, ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- When filling with AdBlue®, remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Note: *Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C).
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

Underbody

Regularly clean the underside of your vehicle using water. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

Under Hood

For removing black rubber marks from under the hood we recommend Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner or Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser. Immediately rinse away any over spray.*

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: *Follow the same procedure for cleaning leather seats when cleaning leather interior. See* ***Cleaning Leather Seats*** *(page 343).*

Note: *Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.*

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.

For grease or tar stains:

- Spot clean the area with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring will set.

Cleaning Black Label or Presidential Interior (If Equipped)

Note: *Alcantara microfiber cloth fabric is made of polyester microfiber with micro-porous polyurethane. Using commercially available fabric cleaners can cause permanent damage.*

Note: *Do not use commercially available leather and vinyl cleaning products on Alcantara microfiber cloth fabric.*

Note: *Lincoln Black Label or Presidential vehicles may have Alcantara microfiber cloth fabric on the seats, headliner, floor mats and door panels.*

Depending on the type of stain, use water, lemon juice or pure ethyl alcohol when cleaning. For cleaning Alcantara microfiber cloth, refer to the following chart:

DEALER ePROCESS

Type of Stain	Cleaning Procedure
Fruit juice, jam, jelly, syrup or ketchup.	Use lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Blood, egg, excrement or urine.	Use cold water and rinse by dabbing with clean water. Avoid warm water because it makes these substances coagulate.
Liquor, alcoholic beverages, wine, beer, cola and tea.	Use lukewarm water. If the color remains, treat with lemon juice and then rinse.
Indelible pencil, cocoa, chocolate, pastry with cream or chocolate, ice cream or mustard.	Use lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Vinegar, hair gel, tomato sauce or coffee with sugar.	Use lemon juice, wipe with lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Dye transfer and all other stains.	Use ethyl alcohol, then dab with water.

DEALER ePROCESS

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.* *See* ***Cleaning Leather Seats*** *(page 343).*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Note: *Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS

1. Regularly clean them with a wheel cleaner. We recommend that you use an approved wheel cleaner if available.
2. Remove dirt and brake dust with a sponge.
3. Remove tar and grease with a bug and tar remover. We recommend that you use an approved bug and tar remover if available.
4. Thoroughly rinse the wheels with water after cleaning.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

DEALER ePROCESS

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminates which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

BODY STYLING KITS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are found on the Tire Label which is located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. This information can also be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post; next to the driver's seating position.

We strongly recommend maintaining these tire pressures at all times. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns, reduced fuel economy, and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Note: *Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.*

Note: *Check your tire pressures at least once per month.*

If your vehicle has a spare tire, set the pressure to the highest value given for your vehicle and tire size combination.

Use only approved wheels and tire sizes, using other sizes could damage your vehicle.

If you change the diameter of the factory installed tires, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer and have the engine management system reprogrammed.

If you intend to change the size of the factory installed tires, check the suitability with an authorized dealer.

Additional information related to the functionality and maintenance of your tires can be found in the Wheels and Tire section. See **Tire Care** (page 356).

Notice to utility vehicle and truck owners

WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Study your owner's manual and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

All-wheel drive system (if equipped)

WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

A vehicle equipped with all-wheel drive has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

For all-wheel-drive vehicles, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. A dissimilar spare tire size; other than the spare tire provided or major dissimilar tire sized between the front and rear axles could cause the all-wheel-drive system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive.

How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Sport utility vehicles and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher - to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter - to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower - to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

As a result of the above dimensional differences, Sport utility vehicles and trucks often have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition. These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

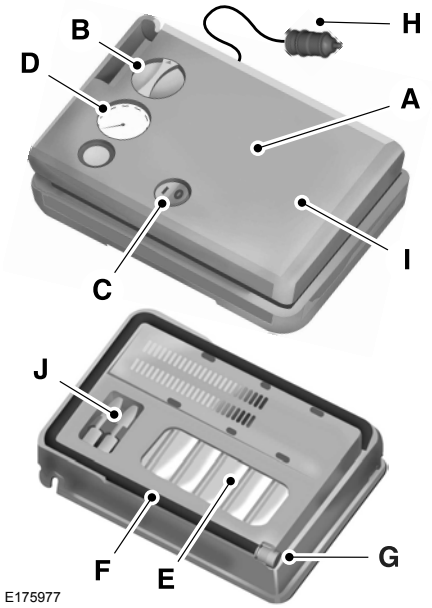
DEALER ePROCESS

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

(IF EQUIPPED)

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See your authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

The kit is under the load floor in the cargo area. The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit provides a temporary tire repair, allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 120 mi (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) to reach a tire service location.



A Air compressor (inside).
B Selector switch.
C On and off button.
D Air pressure gauge.
E Sealant bottle and canister.
F Dual purpose hose: air and repair.
G Tire valve connector.
H Accessory power plug.
I Casing/housing.
J Bike/raft/sports ball adapters.

General Information

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Note: *Do not use the kit if you have severely damaged a tire. Only seal punctures within the tire tread with the kit.*

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than ¼ inch (6 millimeters) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *Do not drive the vehicle above 50 mph (80 km/h).*

Note: *Do not drive further than 120 mi (200 km). Drive only to the closest authorized dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.*

- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

Tips for Use of the Kit

To ensure safe operation of the kit:

- Read all instructions and cautions fully.
- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Switch on the hazard lights.
- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle does not move unexpectedly.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the kit, leave the engine running (only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area) so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the kit unattended during operation.
- Sealant compound contains latex. Those with latex sensitivities should use appropriate precautions to avoid an allergic reaction.
- Keep the kit away from children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -22°F (-30°C) and 158°F (70°C).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use-by date regularly and replace the canister when the sealant expires.
- Do not store the kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or crash. Always store the kit in its original location.
- After sealant use, an authorized dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.
- Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD and DVD player operation.



* When inflation only is required for a tire or other objects, the selector must be in the Air position.

DEALER ePROCESS

What to do When a Tire Is Punctured

You can repair a tire puncture within the tire's tread area in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, inflate the tire with a sealing compound and air. After you inflate the tire, you will need to drive the vehicle a short distance 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air

WARNING: Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.

WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

WARNING: Do not run the engine when operating the air compressor unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

Preparation: Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Switch the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and switch the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.
3. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.

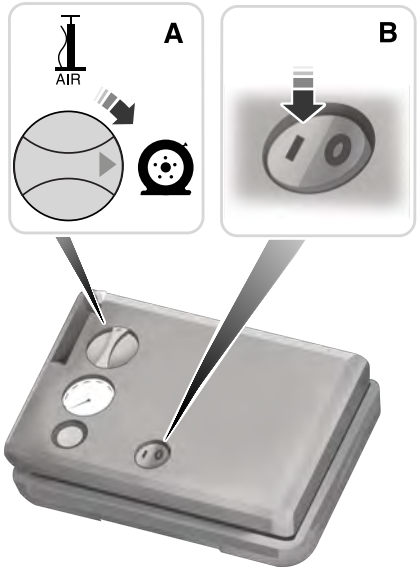


E200523

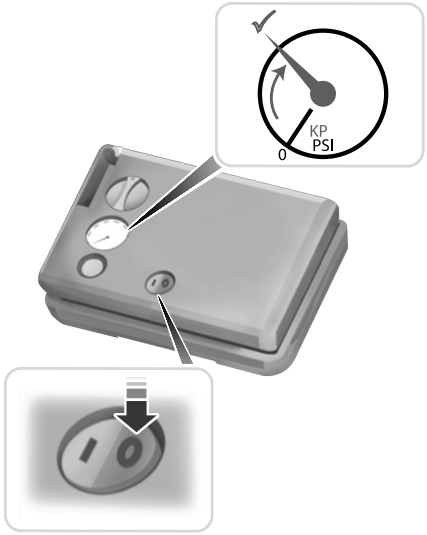
4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
5. Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

6. Start the vehicle and leave the engine running so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.



7. Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Switch the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).
8. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label on the driver's door or the door jamb area. The initial air pressure gauge reading may indicate a value higher than the label pressure while you pump the sealing compound into the tire. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure gauge reading will indicate the tire inflation pressure after about 30 seconds of operation. You should check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.



DEALER ePROCESS

9. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure, switch off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the stowage area.
10. Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
11. After 4 mi (6 km), stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

Note: *If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Note: Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.*

Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure

Note: *If you are proceeding from the First Stage: Re-inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 20 psi (1.4 bar), continue to the next step.*

WARNING: The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:


E175983

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.
4. If required, switch on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure shown on the tire label on the driver's door or door jamb area. You should check the tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.
5. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

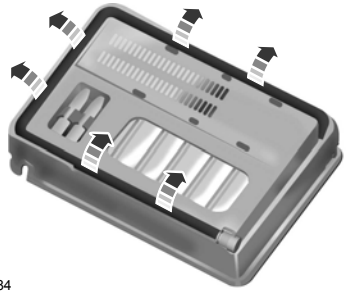
What to Do After the Tire Has Been Sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister. You can obtain sealant canisters and spare parts at an authorized dealer. You can dispose of empty sealant canisters at home. However, you should dispose of canisters still containing liquid sealant through your local authorized dealer or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

Note: *After you use the sealing compound, the maximum vehicle speed is 50 mph (80 km/h) and the maximum driving distance is 120 mi (200 km). You should inspect the sealed tire immediately.*

You can check the tire pressure any time within the 120 mi (200 km) by performing the steps listed previously in the Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure procedure.

Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



E175984

1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.



E175985

2. Unwrap the power cord.



E175986

3. Remove the back cover.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



E175987

4. Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

1. With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.



E175988

3. Snap the back cover back into place.



E175989

4. Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.



E175990

5. Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug into its storage area.

Note: *If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult an authorized dealer for assistance.*

Make sure you check the sealant compound's use-by date regularly. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. Replace the sealant canister when the sealant expires.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

TIRE CARE

Important Information About Low-Profile Tires

If your vehicle has 265/40R21 tires, they are low-profile tires. These tires and wheels give your vehicle a sport appearance. With low-profile tires, you may notice an increase in road noise and faster tire wear, depending on road conditions and driving styles. Due to their design, low-profile tires and wheels are more prone to road damage from potholes, rough or unpaved roads, car wash rails and curb contact than standard tires and wheels.

Note: *Your vehicle's warranty does not cover these types of damages. Take extra caution when driving on rough roads to avoid impacts that could cause wheel and tire damage.*

Important Information About Sport Tires and Wheels

The design of the optional 265/40R21 tires enhances the performance of your vehicle. To continue providing this performance, you must take extra care when operating and maintaining your vehicle.

These low-profile high-performance tires optimize the driving dynamics you expect in a sport vehicle in both dry and wet conditions. These tires are not optimized for off-road or winter (snow or cold weather) performance, and their ride, noise, and wear characteristics are different than non-performance tires. With low-profile tires, you may notice an increase in road noise and faster wear, depending on road conditions and driving habits. Also, because of their lower profile, the tires are more susceptible to road damage from potholes, rough or unpaved roads, car wash rails, and curb contact than standard tires and wheels.

Note: *Your vehicle's warranty does not cover these types of damages. Take extra caution when driving on rough roads to avoid impacts that could cause wheel and tire damage.*

The optional 265/40R21 tires are for track use and may exhibit significantly reduced tread life and increased tire noise compared to the standard equipment tires under normal driving conditions. Increasing the front camber settings beyond the factory settings may further accelerate tread wear and induce tire noise.

Note: *Do not use tire chains on your vehicle's optional 265/40R21 tires and wheels. The use of any type of tire chain on these tires may damage your vehicle.* *See **Using Snow Chains** (page 371).*

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Notice to Crossover Vehicle Owners

Crossover vehicles handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that you encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Crossover vehicles are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

Crossover vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce this risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers.
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions.
- Keep tires properly inflated.
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle.
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Tire Quality Grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**.

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

DEALER ePROCESS

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1 ½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

WARNING: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

*__Tire label:__ A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

*__Tire Identification Number (TIN):__ A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

*__Inflation pressure:__ A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

DEALER ePROCESS

*__Standard load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: for P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load-carrying capability.

*__Extra load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load-carrying capability.

*__kPa:__ Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

*__PSI:__ Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

*__Cold tire pressure:__ The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.0 mi (1.6 km).

*__Recommended inflation pressure:__ The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position) or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

* __B-pillar:__ The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

*__Bead area of the tire:__ Area of the tire next to the rim.

* __Sidewall of the tire:__ Area between the bead area and the tread.

*__Tread area of the tire:__ Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

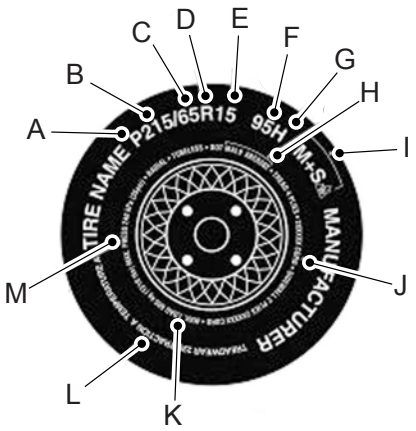
*__Rim:__ The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)

Letter rating	Speed rating
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

H. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

DEALER ePROCESS

K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

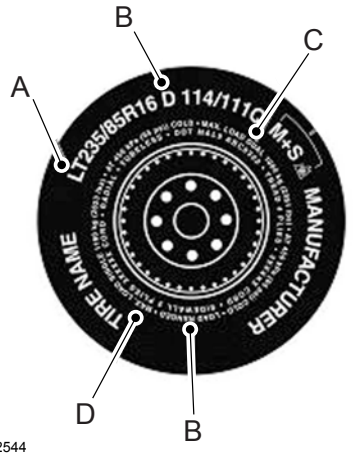
M. **Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure, or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

DEALER ePROCESS



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires. These differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142545

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires. These differences are described below.

DEALER ePROCESS

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport-utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio, which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup

DEALER ePROCESS

and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

Note: *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1.0 mi (1.6 km), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

Note: *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T type mini-spare tires, see the Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly section. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, see the Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information section. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

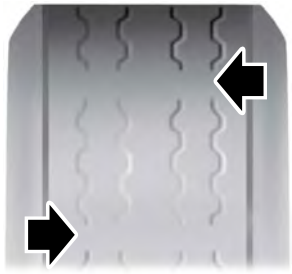
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 millimeters), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 millimeters).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.
You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

WARNING: In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

DEALER ePROCESS

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

The two front tires or two rear tires should generally be replaced as a pair.

DEALER ePROCESS

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, the system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Safety Practices

WARNING: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

*Observe posted speed limits

*Avoid fast starts, stops and turns

*Avoid potholes and objects on the road

*Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension may require alignment of all four wheels.

DEALER ePROCESS

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire Rotation

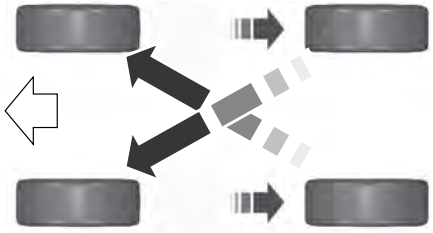
Note: *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

Note: *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the scheduled maintenance information) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life. Sometime irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Front-wheel drive and All-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram).



E142547

USING SUMMER TIRES (IF EQUIPPED)

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to approximately 45°F (7°C) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above 19°F (-7°C). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below 19°F (-7°C). If the tires have been subjected to 19°F (-7°C) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 41°F (5°C) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the

DEALER ePROCESS

vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING: Snow tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury, and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case, or power transfer unit failure. It is also strongly advised to follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

The tires on your vehicle may have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates you may need to use snow chains.

Your vehicle may not be compatible with snow chain or cable usage with the factory-fitted wheels and tires. Only certain chains or snow cables have been approved by Ford as safe for use on your vehicle with the following wheel and tire combination(s): 18x8.0 wheels with 235/60R18 tires. You should only install chains or cables sized at 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire. Not all S-class snow chains meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device. The chains should be mounted in pairs on the front tires only. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specification) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using traction devices:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- When driving with snow chains or cables, do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer; whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains or cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the chains or cables and prevent vehicle damage.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

- Remove the chains or cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use the chains or cables on dry roads.
- If a temporary spare tire is mounted on your vehicle, do not use snow chains on the axle with the temporary spare tire.

If you have any questions regarding snow tires or snow chains, please contact your authorized dealer.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: *You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they could cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.*

Note: *If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it will not function.*

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and could affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

DEALER ePROCESS

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system will not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions could occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device will not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

Note: *Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See **When Inflating Your Tires** in this chapter.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System



The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 112). The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle. To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the system must be retrained following every tire rotation. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset** procedure later in this section.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When Inflating Your Tires

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system will not respond immediately to the air added to your tires. It could take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure could increase about 2–4 psi (14–28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure could decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value could be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as

DEALER ePROCESS

necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

WARNING: To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seat) or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Note: *You need to perform the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure after each tire rotation.*

To provide the vehicle's load carrying capability, some vehicles require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires. The tire pressure monitoring system equipped on these vehicles is designed to illuminate the low tire pressure warning light at two different pressures; one for the front tires and one for the rear tires.

Since tires need to be rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to know when the tires are rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and which are on the rear. With this information, the system can detect and properly warn of low tire pressures.

System reset tips:

- To reduce the chances of interference from another vehicle, perform the system reset procedure at least 3 ft (1 m) away from another Ford Motor Company vehicle undergoing the system reset procedure at the same time.
- Do not wait more than two minutes between resetting each tire sensor or the system can time-out and you have to repeat the entire procedure on all four wheels.
- A double horn sounds indicating the need to repeat the procedure.

Performing the System Reset Procedure

Read the entire procedure before attempting.

1. Drive the vehicle above 20 mph (32 km/h) for at least two minutes, then park in a safe location where you can easily get to all four tires and have access to an air pump.
2. Place the ignition in the off position and keep the key in the ignition.
3. Cycle the ignition to the on position with the engine off.

DEALER ePROCESS

4. Turn the hazard flashers on then off three times. You must accomplish this within 10 seconds. If you successfully enter the reset mode, the horn sounds once, the system indicator flashes and a message shows in the information display. If this does not occur, please try again starting at step 2. If after repeated attempts to enter the reset mode, the horn does not sound, the system indicator does not flash and no message shows in the information display, seek service from your authorized dealer.
5. Train the tire pressure monitoring system sensors in the tires using the following system reset sequence starting with the left front tire in the following clockwise order: Left front - driver side front tire, Right front - passenger side front tire, Right rear - passenger side rear tire, Left rear - driver side rear tire.
6. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left front tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

Note: *The single horn tone confirms that the sensor identification code has been learned by the module for this position. If a double horn is heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful, and you must repeat it.*

7. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right front tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.
8. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right rear tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.
9. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left rear tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds. Training is complete after the horn sounds for the last tire trained, driver side rear tire, the system indicator stops flashing, and a message shows in the information display.
10. Turn the ignition off. If two short horn beeps are heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful and you must repeat it. If after repeating the procedure and two short beeps are heard when the ignition is turned to off, seek assistance from your authorized dealer.
11. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNING: Do not use tire sealants as they may damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

WARNING: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, use the Tire Mobility Kit sealant. Replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 372). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have an authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by us. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, replace it instead of repairing it.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.

DEALER ePROCESS

- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability, if applicable.

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Tire Change Procedure

WARNING: When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P).

WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

DEALER ePROCESS

WARNING: Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.

WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is only supported by a vehicle jack.

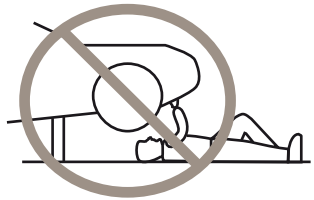
WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

WARNING: Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

WARNING: Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications. If you are unsure if the jack capacity is adequate, contact the authorized dealer.

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.



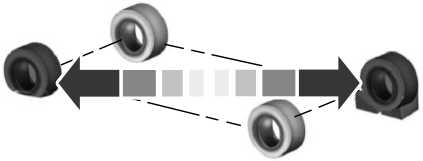
E166722

Note: *The jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle.*

Note: *Passengers should not remain in your vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

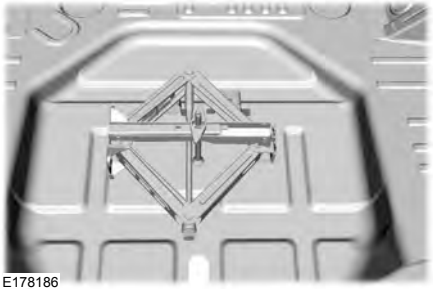
1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



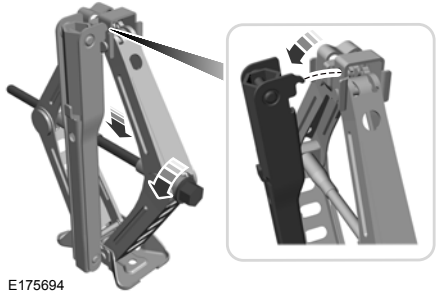
E175447

3. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.
4. Lift and remove the carpeted load floor panel to access the minispare and jack kit.
5. Remove the steel winged washer nut securing the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
6. Remove the spare tire and jack kit from the spare tire compartment.



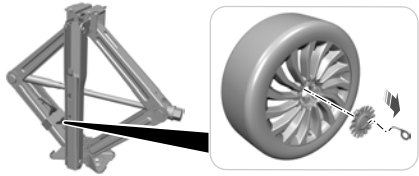
E178186

7. Remove plastic wing nut and jack and lug wrench assembly.
8. Detach the lug wrench from the jack by turning the jack hex nut drive screw counterclockwise. This will lower the jack and loosen the mechanical lock.



E175694

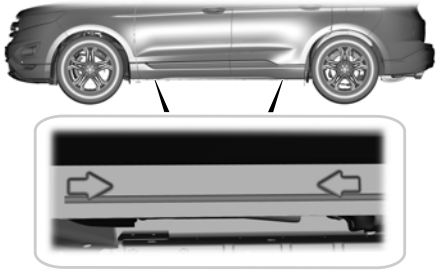
9. If your vehicle has wheel trim covering the lugnuts, use the tool, attached to the jack kit assembly, for removing the wheel trim.



10. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

11. If your vehicle has a warning triangle and you are jacking the vehicle on the roadside shoulder, set the warning triangle upright on the shoulder of the road facing the direction of oncoming traffic.



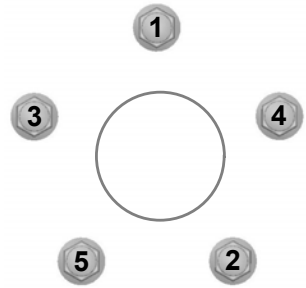
E242877

12. Arrows depict vehicle jacking points on the underside of the vehicle at the locations shown above. The warning label on the jack depicts the details.
13. Find the arrows embossed on the vehicle downward flange next to the tire you are changing.



E201100

14. Position the jack so that the vehicle downward flange rests in the jack saddle flange between the arrows, as shown above. Raise the vehicle by using the lug wrench to turn the jack nut clockwise. Once the flat tire is off the ground, remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
15. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
16. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
17. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 386).

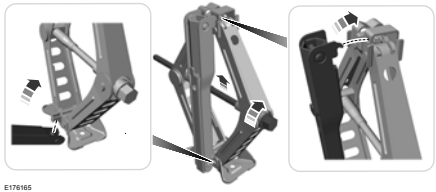


E75442

18. To store the jack kit, fold the jack wrench handle and engage it to the bracket of the jack base using the lug wrench pin. Swing the wrench upwards, adjust the jack height until the wrench hook engages to the hole on the jack.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Turn the hex nut clockwise by hand until secure. Re-position the jack kit assembly into the original vehicle position and secure with the plastic wing nut. Make sure the jack is fastened securely before you drive.



E176165

19. Unblock the wheel and retrieve the warning triangle.

Stowing the flat tire

You cannot store the full-sized road wheel in the temporary spare tire well.

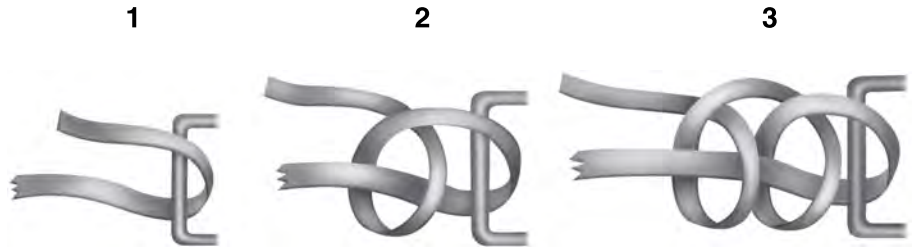
1. Find the flat tire retainer strap tucked inside the jack channel. Lower the carpeted load floor.
2. Stow the flat tire in the cargo area on the load floor with the wheel facing up. Secure the flat tire with the retainer strap by following the next steps.



E142906

3. Locate the rear left side and right side cargo tie-down rings. Push the loop end of the retainer strap through one cargo tie-down ring. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.
4. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
5. Locate the cargo tie-down in the opposite rear corner of the cargo area. Thread the retainer strap though the tie-down and pull tight.

DEALER ePROCESS



E143746

6. Secure the flat tire by tying a 2-half hitch knot.

DEALER ePROCESS

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING: When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb.ft (Nm)*
M14 x 1.5	162 lb.ft (220 Nm)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

DEALER ePROCESS



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

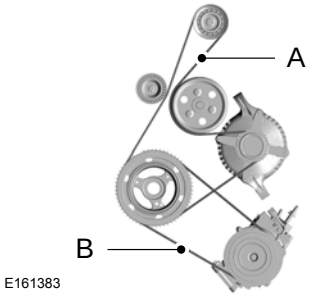
Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

DEALER ePROCESS

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L

Measurement	Specification
Cubic inches.	122
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.027-0.031 in. (0.70-0.80 mm)
Compression ratio.	10.0:1

Drivebelt Routing



A. The **long** drivebelt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.
B. The **short** drivebelt is on the second pulley groove farthest from the engine.

DEALER ePROCESS

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.7L

Measurement	Specification
Cubic inches	164
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6
Compression ratio	10.0:1
Spark plug gap	0.028-0.031 in. (0.7 - 0.8 mm)

Drivebelt Routing



E191903

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.0L

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1912A
Oil filter.	FL-910-S
Battery.	BAGM-94RH7-800
Spark plugs.	SP-550
Cabin air filter.	FP-80 (odor)
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2350 (driver side) WW-1750 (passenger side) WW-1206 (rear window)

We recommend Motorcraft® replacement parts available at your nearest dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. See **General Maintenance Information** (page 524).

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.7L

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1912A
Oil filter.	FL-2062
Battery.	BAGM-94RH7-800
Spark plugs.	SP-542
Cabin air filter.	FP-80 (odor)
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2350 (driver side) WW-1750 (passenger side) WW-1206 (rear window)

We recommend Motorcraft® replacement parts available at your nearest dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft® oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

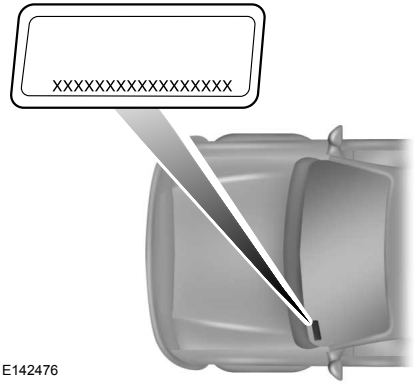
Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. See **General Maintenance Information** (page 524).

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

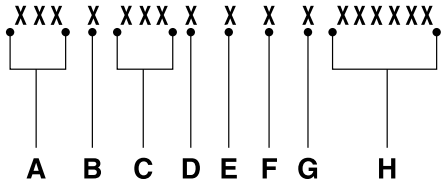
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

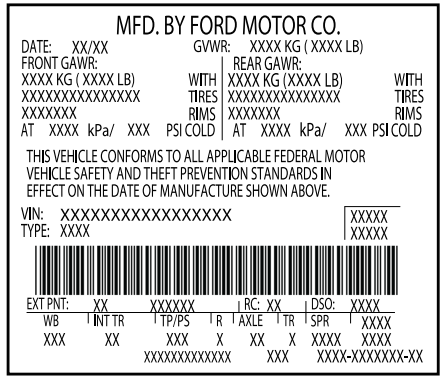
The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

A	World manufacturer identifier
B	Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
C	Make, vehicle line, series, body type
D	Engine type
E	Check digit
F	Model year
G	Assembly plant
H	Production sequence number

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

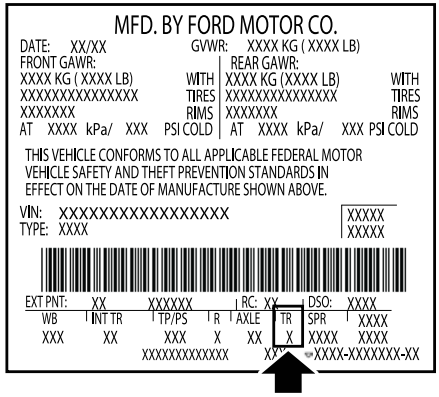


E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

DEALER ePROCESS

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION



E167814

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Eight-speed automatic transmission 8F35	8
Eight-speed automatic transmission 8F57	F

DEALER ePROCESS

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L

Capacities

WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Item	Capacity
Engine oil (with oil filter).	5.5 qt (5.2 L)
Engine coolant.	9.7 qt (9.2 L)
Brake fluid.	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Rear differential fluid (All-wheel drive).	28.1 ± 1.0 fl oz (830 ± 30 ml)
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All-wheel drive).	12.7 ± 1.7 fl oz (375 ± 50 ml)
Automatic transmission fluid.	11.6 qt (11 L) [1]
Windshield washer fluid.	Fill as required
Fuel tank (Front-wheel drive).	18.4 gal (69.7 L)
Fuel tank (All-wheel drive).	18.5 gal (70 L)
A/C refrigerant.	21 oz (0.595 kg)

DEALER ePROCESS

Item	Capacity
A/C refrigerant (Mexico).	22 oz (0.624 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil.	3.2 fl oz (95 ml)

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W30-Q1SP	WSS-M2C946-B1
Motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil CXO-5W30-LSP6	WSS-M2C946-B1
Motor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W30-QSP	WSS-M2C946-B1
Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Name	Specification
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant CVC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake fluid: Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2
Rear differential (All Wheel Drive) fluid: Motorcraft® SAE 75W Disconnect RDU Fluid XY-75W-QL	-
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All Wheel Drive): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Rear Axle Fluid XY-75W85-QL	WSS-M2C942-A
Automatic transmission fluid: Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-12-QULV	WSS-M2C949-A MERCON® ULV
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A

DEALER ePROCESS

Name	Specification
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): R-1234yf Refrigerant YN-33-A	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): R-1234yf Refrigerant HS7Z-19B519-BA	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil (U.S. and Canada): Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil YN-35	WSS-M2C300-A2
A/C refrigerant compressor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5-A	ESB-M1C93-B

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Name	Specification
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	-
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	-
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	-

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage, which the vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.



E276075

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: *We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON ULV transmission fluid should only use MERCON ULV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.*

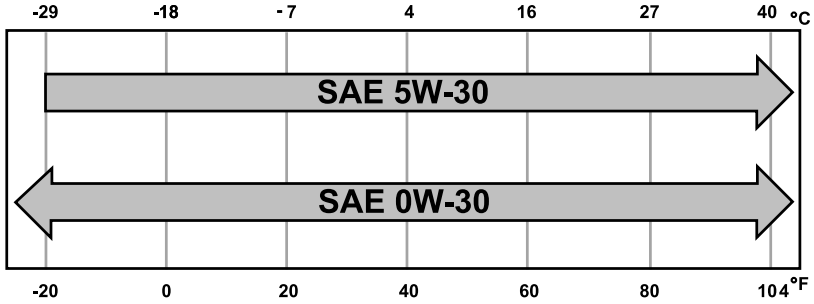
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0°F (-30°C) or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C953-B1

DEALER ePROCESS



CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.7L

Capacities

WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

DEALER ePROCESS

Item	Capacity
Engine oil (with oil filter).	6.0 qt (5.7 L)
Engine coolant.	12.5 qt (11.8 L)
Brake fluid.	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Rear differential fluid (All-wheel drive).	28.1 ± 1.0 fl oz (830 ± 30 ml)
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All-wheel drive).	12.7 ± 1.7 fl oz (375 ± 50 ml)
Automatic transmission fluid.	12.2 qt (11.5 L) [1]
Windshield washer fluid.	Fill as required
Fuel tank (Front-wheel drive).	18.4 gal (69.7 L)
Fuel tank (All-wheel drive).	18.5 gal (70 L)
A/C refrigerant.	21 oz (0.595 kg)
A/C refrigerant (Mexico).	22 oz (0.624 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil.	3.2 fl oz (95 ml)

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W30-Q1SP	WSS-M2C946-B1
Motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil CXO-5W30-LSP6	WSS-M2C946-B1
Motor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W30-QSP	WSS-M2C946-B1
Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant CVC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake fluid: Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2

DEALER ePROCESS

Name	Specification
Rear differential (All Wheel Drive) fluid: Motorcraft® SAE 75W Disconnect RDU Fluid XY-75W-QL	-
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All Wheel Drive): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Rear Axle Fluid XY-75W85-QL	WSS-M2C942-A
Automatic transmission fluid: Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-12-QULV	WSS-M2C949-A MERCON® ULV
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): R-1234yf Refrigerant YN-33-A	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): R-1234yf Refrigerant HS7Z-19B519-BA	WSS-M17B21-A

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Name	Specification
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil (U.S. and Canada): Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil YN-35	WSS-M2C300-A2
A/C refrigerant compressor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5-A	ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	-
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	-
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	-

DEALER ePROCESS

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage, which the vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.



E276075

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: *We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON ULV transmission fluid should only use MERCON ULV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.*

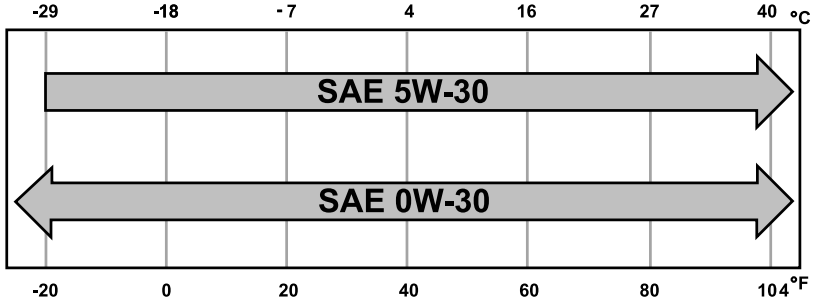
DEALER ePROCESS

Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0°F (-30°C) or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C953-B1



DEALER ePROCESS

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized D.O.T. marking for North America to make sure they have the proper lamp performance, light brightness, light pattern, and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front parking lamp.	LED	LED
Front side marker lamp.	LED	LED
Front direction indicator.	LED	LED
Daytime running lamps.	LED	LED
Front signature lamp.	LED	LED
High-intensity discharge headlamps.	D3S	HID
Side direction indicator.	LED	LED
Rear side marker lamp.	LED	LED
Brake and rear lamp.	LED	LED
Central high mounted brake lamp.	LED	LED
Rear direction indicator.	LED	LED

DEALER ePROCESS

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Reversing lamps.	LED	LED
License plate lamp.	LED	LED

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Interior lamp.	LED	LED
Luggage compartment lamp.	LED	LED

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

DEALER ePROCESS

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530-1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.9 MHz

Note: *Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.*

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

DEALER ePROCESS

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.7 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in the vehicle's CD player.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

DEALER ePROCESS

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

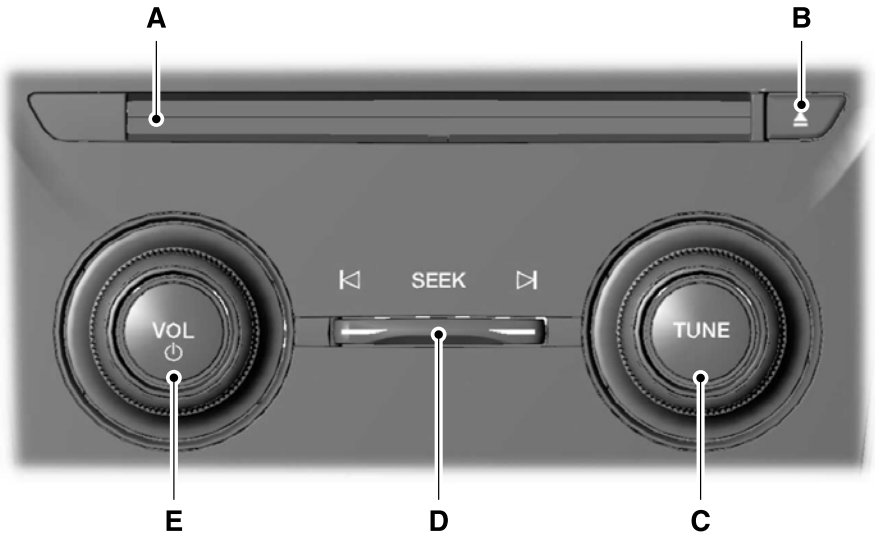
AUDIO UNIT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features.*

Note: *Some features, such as satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*

DEALER ePROCESS



E245593

A CD slot.

B CD eject.

DEALER ePROCESS

C Tune.
D Seek, fast forward and reverse.
E Vol and power.

Tune

In radio mode, turn to search through the radio frequency band. In satellite radio mode, turn to find the previous or next available satellite radio station.

Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse

In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the next or previous track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track. In satellite radio mode, press to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If you select a specific category (such as jazz, rock or news), press to find the next or previous station in the category you select.

Volume and Power

Turn to adjust the volume. Press to switch the system on and off.

USB PORT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E201595

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices, if supported.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

MEDIA HUB

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The media hub may be on the instrument panel or center console.

The media hub may contain one or more of the following inputs:

See **USB Port** (page 413).

See **Audio Unit** (page 411).

DEALER ePROCESS

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands. By integrating with your Bluetooth enabled phone, the touchscreen provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, climate control, navigation, and your phone's SYNC 3 compatible apps.

Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button changes color when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS



DEALER ePROCESS

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. See **Settings** (page 481).
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

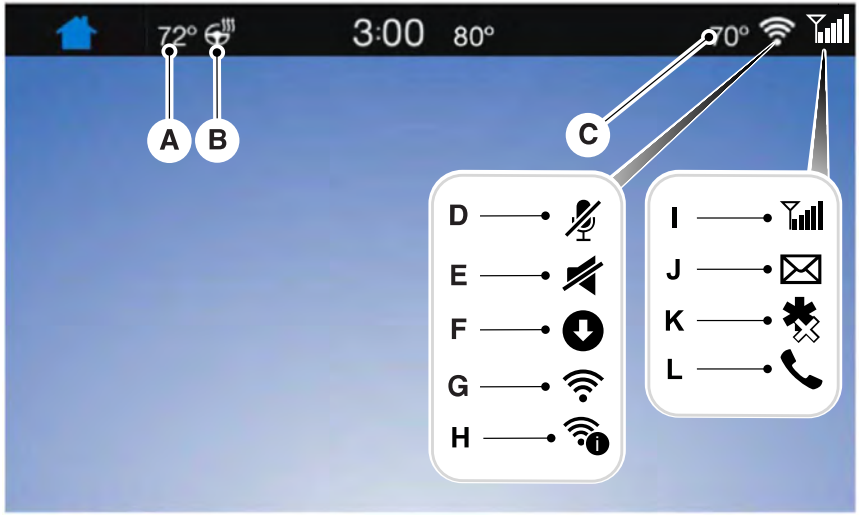
The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation, communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.

DEALER ePROCESS



E270077

DEALER ePROCESS

Callout	Item	Description
A	Driver Temperature	This shows the temperature the driver selects through the climate control system.
B	Heated steering wheel (If equipped)	When you activate the heated steering wheel option on the touch screen, this icon displays. It only displays when there is not a physical button for the heated steering wheel.
C	Passenger Temperature	When the passenger's temperature has been adjusted and is no longer linked to the driver's temperature, it displays here. If Dual is turned off and the temperatures are linked, the passenger's temperature does not display.
D	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when your phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
E	Mute	This icon displays when the audio system is muted.
F	Download	This icon appears when SYNC 3 receives a software update. Pressing the icon shows more details about the new software.
G	Wi-Fi	This icon appears if a Wi-Fi network is connected.
H	Wi-Fi in Range	An available Wi-Fi network is within range.
I	Signal Strength	This icon displays the phone signal strength and the roaming signal strength.
J	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.
K	911 Assist Off	This icon displays when 911 Assist is set to off and your phone is connected to SYNC.
L	In-Call	This icon displays when a phone call is active.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including AM, FM and satellite radio, CDs, and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Climate	Allows you to adjust the temperature, fan speed and airflow within the vehicle.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.
Navigation (If equipped)	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iphone or android device. Also, access built-in additional features such as SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if equipped).
	If your vehicle is a hybrid, plug-in hybrid, or electric this is also where your settings and power information is located.
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touch-screen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 432).

Accessing and Adjusting Modes Through Your Vehicle Information Display (If Equipped)

Depending on your vehicle and selected options you may be able to control some of the SYNC 3 features on your information display.

You can make the following adjustments using the information display SYNC 3 screen:

DEALER ePROCESS

Option	Information				
Audio	Information for current audio playing.				
	Select source.				
Navigation	View current road and speed limit (if information is available).				
	View current route, next turn, time to your destination (depending on cluster level), distance to destination (depending on cluster level), and ability to cancel route.				
	If you do not have an active navigation route programed, the compass is shown.				
Phone	If you are not on a call, a call can be made by selecting: *				
	Quick dial	All calls	Incoming calls	Outgoing calls	Missed calls
	If you are on a call, the call information is displayed on the information display.				
	If you are receiving a call, you can accept it by selecting OK on the right-hand steering wheel controls.				

* Depending on your vehicle options, all of these choices may not display.

Use the **OK** and arrow buttons on the right side of your steering wheel to scroll through the available modes.

The selection menu expands and different options appear.

- Press the up and down arrows to scroll through the modes.
- Press the right arrow to enter the mode, use the left arrow to exit the mode.
- Press the up and down arrows to make adjustments within the chosen mode.
- Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, compass appears in the display instead of navigation. If you press the right arrow to go into the compass menu, you can see the compass graphic. The compass displays the direction in which the vehicle is traveling, not true direction (for example, if the vehicle is traveling west, the middle of the compass graphic displays west; north displays to the left of west though its true direction is to the right of west).*

Using the Controls on the Steering Wheel

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

VOL: Control the volume of audio output.

Mute: Mute the audio output.

Voice: Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

PHONE ACCEPT: Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

PHONE REJECT: Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

Note: *On some models, **SEEK NEXT** may be combined with **PHONE REJECT** and **SEEK PREVIOUS** may be combined with **PHONE ACCEPT.***

M: Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media sources (modes).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 81).

Using Your Bezel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing audio.
- **Seek** and **Tune:** Use as you normally would in audio modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the audio system.
- **SOURCE** or **MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to advance through available media modes.
- **SOUND:** Press to access the Sound menu where you can adjust sound and other audio settings.
- **1-6:** Press and hold to store or press to select an AM, FM or SIRIUS memory preset. See **Audio System** (page 409).

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

- **DISP:** Switch the display on or off. You can also touch the screen to switch the display back on.
- **Temperature, fan and climate control buttons:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system. See **Climate Control** (page 138).

911 Assist

WARNING: Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

WARNING: Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, by visiting:

Website
www.owner.lincoln.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

For important information about airbag deployment and the fuel pump shut-off please see the Supplementary Restrains and Roadside Emergencies sections of your owner manual.

To switch 911 Assist on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 481).

DEALER ePROCESS

To make sure that 911 Assist works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

Safety Information

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h). Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Points of Interest reviews and ratings, SiriusXM Travel Link sports information, or ski condition search areas.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following table for more specific examples.

DEALER ePROCESS

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi	Editing Wi-Fi settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

Creating a SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Visit the website to sign up and register.

Website
www.owner.lincoln.com www.syncmyride.ca

DEALER ePROCESS

Website
www.syncmaroute.ca

Lincoln Connect with Lincoln Way (If Equipped)

With a Lincoln Connect-equipped vehicle, you can use Lincoln Way® to track your vehicle's location and remotely access vehicle features such as start, lock and unlock and vehicle status including fuel level and approximate mileage. You can also schedule specific times to remotely start your vehicle so it's ready to hit the road as soon as you are. Lincoln Way® is available through a free download via the Apple App Store® or Google Play™. Message and data rates may apply. Services may be limited by mobile phone network coverage area.

- FCC: LHJ-FAN
- FCC: LHJ-FANW
- IC: 2807E-FAN
- IC: 2807E-FANW

Updating Your System

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

Website
www.owner.lincoln.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports on the media hub and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

Please reference the website for any further actions.

Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

DEALER ePROCESS

To connect your system to Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 481). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 501).

If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

Customer Assistance

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you are not able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-8:00pm EST.

United States: 1-800-521-4140.

Canada: 1-800-387-9333.

Mexico: 01-800-719-8466.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

Privacy Information

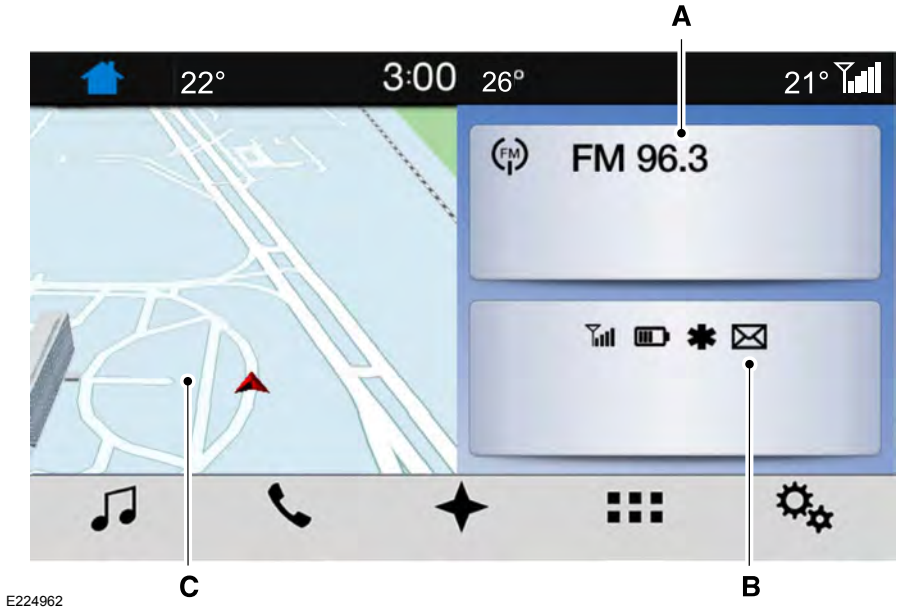
When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC 3, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. See **Settings** (page 481). System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC 3 module. The Lincoln Motor Company does not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of The Lincoln Motor Company.

DEALER ePROCESS

HOME SCREEN



DEALER ePROCESS

Item	Tile	Home screen display
A	Audio	Shows the active media source. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the compass.
B	Phone	The name of the connected phone appears on the screen. The status of the phone features also appear. This includes signal strength, battery charge, text messaging and roaming.
C	Navigation *	This map displays your current location or current route in real time. When you have navigation active, you also see the next turn and the length of time and distance to your destination. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the audio information.

* If equipped.

You can touch any of the feature displays to access that feature.

Anytime you select the home button, the system returns you to this screen.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

DEALER ePROCESS

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands
	Navigation List of Commands
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

DEALER ePROCESS

Audio Voice Commands

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of an artist, album, song or a genre.

To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Sirius Channel ___ [1]	You can say the Sirius channel name or number such as "Sirius channel 16".
You can also turn to a Sirius channel by saying the channel's name, such as "The Pulse".	
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "FM 88.7" or "AM 1580".
FM ___ HD ___ [1]	Allows you to tune to a specific HD frequency such as “FM 88.7 HD 1”.
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist The Beatles" or "Play song Penny Lane".

DEALER ePROCESS

Voice command	Description
Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	
Browse ___ Browse Artist ___ Browse Album ___ Browse Genre ___ Browse Playlist ___ Browse Audiobook ___ Browse Podcast ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse artist The Beatles" or "Browse genre folk".

[1] This option may not be available in all markets or may require a subscription.

Climate Voice Commands (If Equipped)

You can control the temperature of the vehicle using voice commands.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for climate voice commands it can be the desired degrees for the temperature setting.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

To adjust the temperature, say:

Voice command	Description
Set Temperature ____	Adjust the temperature between 60–85°F (15.5–29.5°C).

Phone Voice Commands

Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth enabled phone to the system.

To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See **Settings** (page 481).

Making Calls

____ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

DEALER ePROCESS

Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as “Dial 867-5309”.

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If you did not enter the full number with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits you state.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or a major brand name, where major brand name is a chain with more than 20 locations

You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality. You can also search for an address in a specific state or province.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category or major brand name you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find a POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.

DEALER ePROCESS

Voice command	Description
Find an Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Find the Nearest <POI Category>	State the name of a POI category or major brand name you would like to search for.
Show Previous Destinations	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Show Favorites	Allows you to see a list of your favorite destinations.
Drive Home	Allows you to route to your home address.
Drive to Work	Allows you to route to your work address.

In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Displays the active route.
Route Summary	Displays the list of upcoming maneuvers.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Voice command	Description
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets. Activation and a subscription are required.

You can say the following commands to access SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link:

Voice command	Description
Show Traffic	Displays a list of traffic incidents.
Show Weather Map	Displays the current weather map.
Show Fuel Prices	Displays a list of fuel prices.
Show 5 Day Forecast	Displays the 5 day weather forecast.
Help	

Voice Settings Commands

You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Call Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Voice command	Description
Call Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

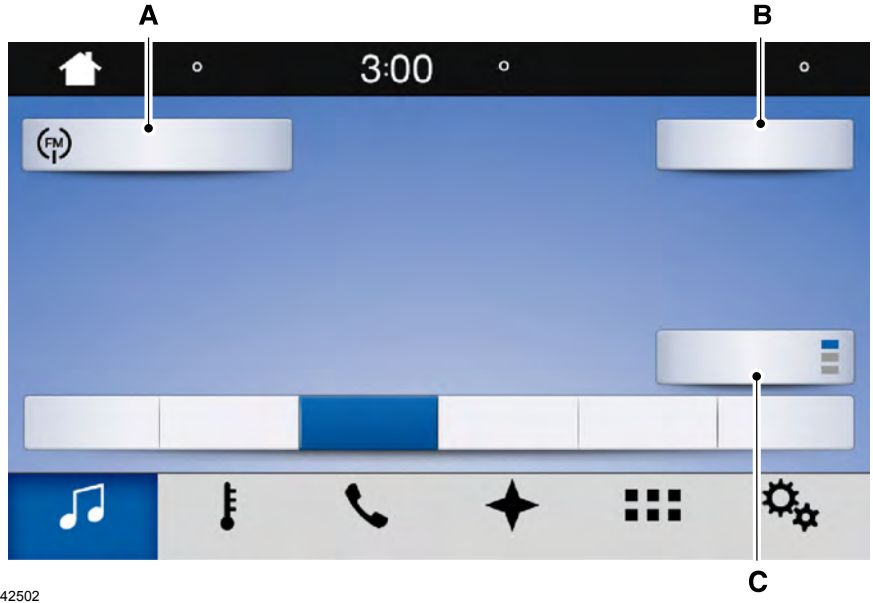
Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. You can adjust the fan speed during a voice session, simply press the fan buttons (or turn the fan knob) to increase or decrease the fan speed to the setting you prefer.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

ENTERTAINMENT



E242502

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Message	Message and Description
A	Sources
B	Direct Tune
C	Presets

Note: *Your vehicle may allow you to save presets from different audio sources on the same page.*

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

Menu Item	
AM	
FM	
SIRIUS [1]	
CD [1]	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

[1] This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.

AM/FM Radio

Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

There are two preset banks available for AM and three banks for FM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated)

Note: *This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.*



E234451

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

SiriusXM satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SiriusXM satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of SiriusXM satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming. This includes canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. We are not responsible for any such programming changes.*

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

The following buttons are available for SiriusXM:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Browse	Touch this button to see a list of available stations.	
Direct Tune	A pop-up appears, allowing you to type in the call numbers of a station. Once you enter the stations call numbers, you can select:	
	Enter	The system tunes to the station you select.
	Cancel	You exit the pop-up and the current station continues to play.
	You can press the backspace button to delete the previous number.	

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Replay	Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you remain tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.	
	Live	When you are in replay mode, you are not able to select a different preset until you return to live audio. Pressing this button returns you to the live broadcast.
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts. See **Settings** (page 481).	

Memory Presets

To set a preset, tune to the station then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and returns once the station is stored.

There are three preset banks available for SiriusXM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. See **Settings** (page 481).

DEALER ePROCESS

SiriusXM Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential Reception Issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

Troubleshooting Tips		
Message	**Cause**	**Action**
Acquiring Signal	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.

DEALER ePROCESS

Troubleshooting Tips		
Message	**Cause**	**Action**
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
Satellite acquiring signal...	The signal is lost from the SiriusXM satellite or SiriusXM tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check channel guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
SIRIUS Subscription updated	SiriusXM has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

Note: *This feature may not be available in all markets.*

To activate HD radio, please see the Radio Settings in the Settings Chapter. See **Settings** (page 481).

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit:

Website
www.hdradio.com

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



E142616

The HD logo is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

Note: *There is also an additional feature for stations that have more than 1 HD multicast (For example, HD1 or HD2). The HD logo and Radio text appears as a button. Pressing this button allows you to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency. For example, if you are on 101.1 and it has HD1, HD2, HD3, pressing the button repeatedly causes the radio to cycle through the HD stations in a cyclic increasing order.*

DEALER ePROCESS

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

Message	Action and Description
Presets	Allows you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when the channel saves. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any station you save, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential Reception Issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

DEALER ePROCESS

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential Station Issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form.[1]
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. [1]

[1] You can find the form here:

DEALER ePROCESS

Website
http://hdradio.com/stations/feedback

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of DTS. The vehicle manufacturer and DTS are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

CD (If equipped)

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat. For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

DEALER ePROCESS

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

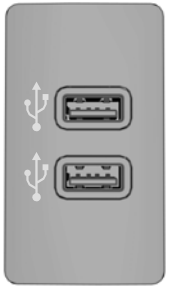
DEALER ePROCESS

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All
	Playlists
	Artist
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio books
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

USB Ports



E211463

The USB ports are in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as iHeartRadio through a USB or Bluetooth enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 478).

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See* ***Automatic Climate Control*** *(page 138).*

Accessing the Climate Control Menu

MENU Touch the button to access additional controls for the front climate system.

Directing the Airflow

Touch the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.

DEALER ePROCESS



Touch the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air that circulates in your vehicle.

Setting the Temperature

Touch up or down on the left-hand temperature control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: *This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.*

Touch up or down on the right-hand temperature control to set the right-hand temperature.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

MAX A/C: Touch the button to activate and maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

A/C: Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: *In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.*

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings and off.

Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

DEALER ePROCESS

Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Touch the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings and off.

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Touch the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Touch the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.*

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with ***A/C***, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.*

Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings and off.

Accessing Rear Climate Controls



Touch the button to access additional controls for the rear climate system.

DEALER ePROCESS

Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator



Touch the button.

When on, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on rear automatic operation, then set the temperature.

Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings and off.

Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings and off.

Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings and off.

PHONE

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

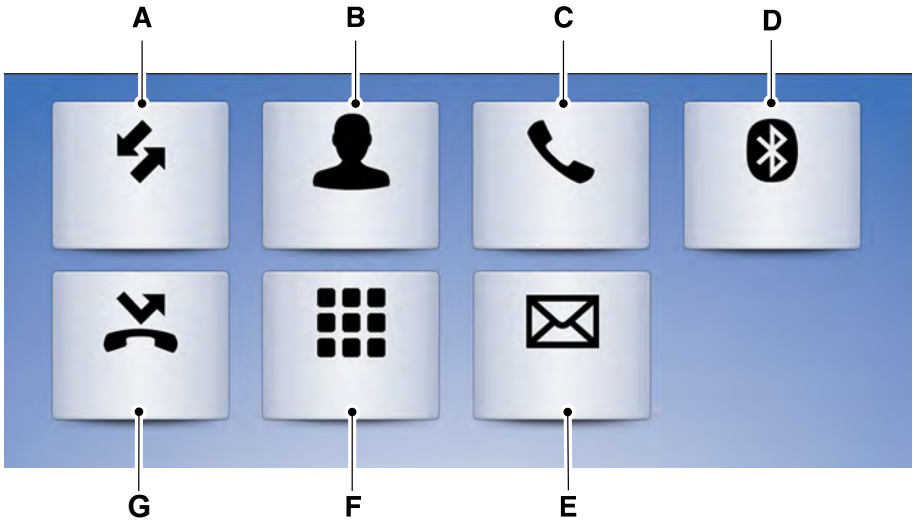
To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Websites
owner.lincoln.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

DEALER ePROCESS



E251249

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls.

DEALER ePROCESS

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
		You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list. You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			
		A-Z Jump		Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.	
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts.			
D	Change Device	Gives you access to the list of paired or connected Bluetooth devices allowing you to change or select a device.			
E	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.			
F	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.			
		Call		Press this button to begin a call.	
G	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to reject all incoming calls automatically. Text message notifications do not display on the screen. All ringtones and alerts are set to silent.			

DEALER ePROCESS

If your phone has a voice assistant feature, you may see a button to access it in the menu. You can also press and hold the voice button on the steering wheel to use this feature. See **Voice Control** (page 83).

Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 432). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: *You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.
- 911 Assist (United States and Canada Only). See **Settings** (page 481).

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

DEALER ePROCESS

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press and hold the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

DEALER ePROCESS

Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **Media Hub** (page 414).
2. Follow the prompts on the touchscreen.
3. Follow the prompts that appear on your phone to allow access to Apple CarPlay.

After completing the setup, your phone connects to Apple CarPlay automatically when plugged into a USB port.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device.
Switch Apple CarPlay off.

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

Note: *Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.*

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

1. Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).

Note: *The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market.*

2. Plug your device into a USB Port. See **USB Port** (page 413).
3. Follow the prompt on the touchscreen.
4. Follow the prompts that appear on your device.

Note: *You may be prompted to update additional apps on your device. This may require mobile data usage.*

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device.
Switch Android Auto off.

Note: *You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select **Apple CarPlay Preferences** or **Android Auto Preferences**.*

DEALER ePROCESS

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

Note: *Contact Google for Android Auto support.*

NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

Map Mode

Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of 2D city maps, 3D landmarks and 3D city models (when available). 2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use, landscape features, and detailed railroad infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourism value.

3D city models are complete 3D models of entire city areas including navigable roads, parks, rivers and rendered buildings. 3D landmarks and city models appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage of these varies and improves with updated map releases.



Select the zoom in icon to see a closer view of the map.



Select the zoom out icon to see a farther away view of the map.

You can adjust the view in preset increments. You can also pinch to zoom in or out of the map.

The information bar tells you the names of streets, cities or landmarks as you hover over them with the crosshair curser.

You can change your view of the map by tapping on the location indicator icon on the right hand side of the screen. You can choose from the following options:



Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 3 mi (5 km).



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. Adjust this viewing angle and rotate the map 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

DEALER ePROCESS



Mute: Press to mute the audio navigation guidance. Press the button again to un-mute the guidance.





Points of Interest (POI) grouping icon: You can choose up to three POI icons to display on the map. If the chosen POIs are located close together or are at the same location a box is used to display a single category icon instead of repeating the same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When you select the box on the map, a pop-up appears indicating how many POIs are in this location. Select the pop up to see a list of the available POIs. You can scroll through and select POIs from this list.

If your vehicle is low on charge or fuel, station icons automatically display on the map.

If you have subscribed to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (where available), traffic flow will be indicated on the map by green (clear), yellow (slowing), and red (stopped) road highlights. Traffic flow is indicated where the information is available and varies across the US.

You can choose to display traffic icons on the map representing twelve different types of incidents. See **Settings** (page 481).

You can set a destination by hovering above a location and selecting:

Button
Start

Destination Mode

To set a destination, press:

Menu Item	Description
Destination	
Enter a navigation destination in any of the following formats:	
Search	Street Address

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Description
	(number, street, city, state) For example "12 Mainstreet Dearborn MI"
	Partial Address (number, street) if searching in current state (number, street and zip code (or postal code in Canada)) if searching out of state You can enter unique addresses that contain door number prefixes with or without the prefix. For example, you could enter "6N340 Fairway Lane" or "340 Fairway Lane".
	City (name or zip code)
	Point of Interest (name or category)
	Intersection (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2)
	Latitude and Longitude (##.###### , ##.######)

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Description	
	This is in a decimal degrees format, one to six decimal places are accepted.	
	You are given autocomplete options below the address bar to select as you type. If you do not give an exact destination, a menu displays with your possible selections.	
Previous Destinations	Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination.	
	Delete All	Select this option to remove all previous destinations.
Home	Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays. To set your Home, press:	
	Home	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Work	Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Work displays. To set your Work:	
	Work	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Description	
Favorites	Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites:	
	Add a Favorite	Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar.
	Search	Select this option to have the system locate the address you have entered.
	Save	Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen.
	The address saves as a favorite and you see the favorites screen. You can now select this address from the favorites screen.	
Point of Interest (POI) Categories	POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration):	
	Food	
	Fuel	
	Hotel	
	ATM	
	See All	Press to view additional categories. Once you have selected a category, follow the menus to find what you are looking for.
	Inside of these categories you can search by:	
	Nearby	

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Description
	Along Route
	Near Destination
	In a City

Once you have chosen your destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Save	This saves the destination to your favorites.	
Start	This shows you a map of your entire route. You can then choose your route from three different options.	
	Fastest	Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest	Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Economical Route	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
	The time and distance for each route also displays.	
Cancel	On the route screen, you can choose to cancel the current navigation. The system asks for confirmation then returns you to the map mode screen.	

DEALER ePROCESS

Once you have chosen your destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start	The system uses a variety of screens and prompts to guide you to your destination. During Route guidance, you can press the maneuver arrow icon on the map if you want the system to repeat route guidance instructions. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects that the vehicle is moving. The navigation map shows your estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time and the distance to your destination. SYNC 3 may not always announce vehicle arrival at the exact point of your destination and you may have to cancel a route manually.

Navigation Menu

In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu.

During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons.

To access the Navigation menu, press:

Button		
Menu		
You can then select:		
Screen View	Full Map	A full screen map displays during navigation.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Button		
	Highway Exit Info	Highway exit information displays on the right hand side of the screen during navigation. Points of interest icons display for restaurants, hotels, fuel stations and ATMs when they are present at the exit. You can select the POI icons to receive a listing of specific locations. You can select the POI location as a waypoint or destination if desired.
	Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:
		Avoid
		The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.
Traffic List	You can find the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information by pressing this button. This information requires an active subscription to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link. When a route is not active, a list of nearby traffic incidents displays (if any are present). When a route is active, you can choose to display a list of traffic nearby or on the route.	
Navigation Settings	Press this button to adjust your preferences. See **Settings** (page 481).	
Where Am I?	Provides your current location city and the nearest road.	
The following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route:		
Cancel Route	The system asks for confirmation and then returns you to the map mode screen.	
View Route	Press this to see a map of the full route.	
Detour	An alternate route displays in comparison with the current route.	

DEALER ePROCESS

Button		
Edit Waypoints	Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See **Waypoints** later in this section for information on how to set waypoints.	
	Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints.	
	You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
	To return to your route press:	Go

Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route.

To add a waypoint:

1. Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu.
2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, the screen allows you to set the destination as a waypoint by selecting:

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	
Add Waypoint	The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the menu icon on the right hand side of the location. You can select up to five waypoints.
You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
To return to your route, press:	Go

SYNC AppLink

The AppLink app allows you to use some SYNC 3 navigation features on your phone.

First Mile Navigation

When you switch your ignition off, the location of your vehicle is recorded and sent to your SYNC AppLink app. The location of your vehicle can be viewed within the app. You can also view walking directions to your vehicle.

Last Mile Navigation

When you park near your destination, the system provides walking directions to your destination.

POI Search

Your paired phone can be used to access additional points of interest (POI). These points of interest can only be access when your phone is paired.

Send To Car

You can send destinations to your navigation system using a computer or phone using AppLink.

cityseeker (If Equipped)

Note: *cityseeker point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 1,110 cities (1,049 in the United States, 36 in Canada and 15 in Mexico).*



E225487

DEALER ePROCESS

cityseeker, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address, phone number and a star rating.

Press **More Information** to see a photo, a review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price and the web address. This screen displays the point of interest icons.

For restaurants, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address. Hotel service icons include:

- Restaurant
- Business center
- Handicap facilities
- Laundry
- Refrigerator
- 24 hour room service
- Fitness center
- Internet access
- Pool
- Wi-Fi

Attractions include nearby landmarks, amusement parks, historic buildings and more. cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, reviews, hour of operation and admission price.

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link is available on vehicles equipped with navigation and only in select markets. You must activate and subscribe to receive SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information. It helps you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see current sports scores. See **Apps** (page 478).

The system calculates a reasonable efficient route based on available speed limits, traffic, and road conditions. You may know a local short cut that is more efficient at a given time than the route provided by SYNC 3, but you should expect a slight difference in minutes or miles with the SYNC 3 route.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada or 01-800-557-5539 in Mexico. You can also visit:

Website
www.navigation.com/sync

You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

DEALER ePROCESS

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com/mapcreator. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Map coverage includes the USA (including Puerto Rico and the US Virgin Islands), Canada and Mexico.

APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smartphone apps. When an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: *Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.*

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit:*

Websites
owner.lincoln.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *We encourage you to review the smartphone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Lincoln is not responsible for your app or its use of data.*

Note: *AppLink is a native SYNC system feature. Accessing mobile apps through AppLink is only possible when Android Auto or Apple CarPlay are disabled. Some apps may only be accessible in the car through AppLink and others only through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. Please refer to the Smartphone Connectivity information to disable Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.*

Note: *In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the app needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.*

Note: *If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Action and Description
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Lincoln in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, odometer, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain this data for only as long as necessary to provide this service, troubleshoot, and improve products and services and to offer you products and services that may interest you where allowed by law.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Lincoln reserves the right to limit functionality or deactivate mobile apps at any time.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Lincoln is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 481).

App Permissions

The system organizes the app permissions into groups. You can individually grant these group permissions.You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

Note: *You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.*

Note: *If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.*

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe

DEALER ePROCESS

operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets.*

Note: *In order to use SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, your vehicle must have navigation.*

Note: *A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to www.siriusxm.com/travellink for more information.*

Note: *Visit www.siriusxm.com/traffic and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.*

Note: *Neither Sirius nor Lincoln is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.*

When you subscribe to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Traffic on Route	Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, near your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.	
Traffic Nearby		
Fuel Prices	Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.	
Movie Listings	Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.	
Weather	Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five-day forecast for the chosen area.	
	Map	Select to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds.

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Area	Select to choose from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info	Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.	
Ski Conditions	Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.	

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound

Pressing this button allows you to adjust the following:

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns Treble, Midrange, and Bass sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Sound Settings	
Speed Compensated Vol.	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.
Sound Settings	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Action and Description		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Cover Art Priority	Media Player	Cover art displays from your device's music files. If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.	
	Gracenote®	The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files. This overrides any cover art from your device.	
Gracenote® Management	Switches on and off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist and album.		
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.		
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.		
Update Media Index	Erase the stored media information in order to re-index.		

Clock

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

You can adjust the following features:

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Auto Time Zone Update	When active, the clock adjusts to time zone changes. This feature is only available in vehicles with navigation.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	On
	Off

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. **See Pairing a Device** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

Phone

Pair your Bluetooth enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

DEALER ePROCESS

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Website
owner.ford.com owner.lincoln.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
You can then select:	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.
Disconnect	
Make Primary	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Press the info icon next to the device name to see phone and device information.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Manage Contacts	
You can then select:	
Auto-Download Contacts	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:	
	First Name	Last Name
Re-download Contacts	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Contacts	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
You can then select:	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringers.	

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Messaging	
You can then select:	
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

You can enable and disable the following options as well:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

DEALER ePROCESS

911 Assist

Enabling 911 Assist

Note: *For this feature to work, your cell phone must have Bluetooth and connect with SYNC3.*

To activate 911 Assist from the settings screen select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
911 Assist	Press this button to enter the settings screen for this feature. You can switch this feature on and off by sliding the scrollbar as follows.

Slide the scrollbar to switch this feature on.

You can set your contacts in the phone book for emergency quick dialing.

Setting Emergency Contacts

Ensure the phone book of your cell phone downloaded to SYNC 3.

From the settings screen select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
911 Assist	Press this button to enter the settings screen for this feature.
Set Emergency Contacts	Select this option as it displays on the screen.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Select a Contact	Select this option under <Emergency contact 1>.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

The screen lists contacts in the phone book. Select the contact that you want to set as emergency contact. You can set Emergency Contact 2 by same process. You can set two Emergency Contacts in total.

Note: *After SYNC3 tries to place an emergency call, the Emergency Contact button displays on the touch screen. You need to press the button to call the contact through your Bluetooth phone.*

Note: *If the vehicle is equipped with navigation, a map with your current street information displays on the screen when 911 Assist is in process.*

Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
FM HD Radio AM HD Radio (Dependent on current radio source, If Available)	Activation of this feature allows you to listen to HD radio broadcasts.
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh
	Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.

DEALER ePROCESS

SiriusXM

This button is available if SiriusXM is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Category for Seek	If you select a category, seek functions only stop on channels in that category.
Parental Lockout	Select to create a personal identification number (PIN), which allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.
Edit Alerts	Select to switch on or off songs, artists or teams alerts or delete an alert or delete all alerts.

You can also view your satellite radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN) from this screen. You need this number when communicating with SiriusXM to activate, modify or track your account.

Navigation

You can adjust many of the Navigation preferences by selecting the following menus.

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Map Preferences	
Then select any of the following:	
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Menu Item	Action and Description	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map. A rest area POI icon is displayed on the map regardless of this setting.	
	Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs
Incident Map Icons	This menu allows you to choose which incident icons you would like to have displayed on the navigation map.	

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest	Fastest	Eco
Always Use ___ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Use HOV Lanes	The system selects High Occupancy Vehicle or car pool lanes when providing route guidance.		

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.
Dynamic Route Guidance	Enable or disable considering traffic information when planning a route. The system can find a faster route based on heavy traffic flow information or detect a Road Closed incident and find a detour route if possible.

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.
Then select any of the following:	
Voice and Tones	
Voice Only	
Tones Only	

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Navigation Source Selection

The screen lists available alternative navigation sources using Applink.

Mobile Apps

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device on SYNC 3. In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected devices send data to us in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place.

Note: *Not all Mobile Apps are compatible with the system.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. We are not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device.*

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Mobile Apps	On	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.
	Off	
	You can view the status of mobile app permissions in the settings menu.	
Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:		
Update Mobile Apps	This provides information on the current state of available app updates.	
	There are three possible statuses:	

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Action and Description		
	Update Needed	Up-To-Date	Updating Mobile Apps...
	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.	No update is required.	The system is trying to receive an update.
	Request Update		Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, select:
			Request Update
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.		
There may also be SYNC 3 enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.		

Note: *We is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve us to provide to an app.*

General

Access and adjust the system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touchscreen Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
About SYNC	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Wi-Fi & Hotspot (If Equipped)

Access SYNC Wi-Fi and Vehicle Hotspot settings and information.

System Wi-Fi

You can access the following:

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for SYNC 3 vehicle software updates.
Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

Vehicle Hotspot

You can access the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi Hotspot On/Off	Allows you to turn the hotspot on and off.
Settings	Allows you to view and edit hotspot settings such as the SSID and password.
Data Usage	Allows you to view your vehicle's hotspot plan and data usage.
Manage Devices	Allows you to manage devices connected to your hotspot.

DEALER ePROCESS

Note: *The Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot (Vehicle Hotspot) may be operational while ignition is On and may remain operational while the ignition is Off.*

Note: *Vehicle Hotspot services are provided by the vehicle network carrier, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

Note: *It is the account owner's responsibility to remove the vehicle from the vehicle network carrier account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred. If the owner would like to remove the vehicle from the account for any reason, please contact your vehicle network carrier for more information.*

Note: *Data, such as the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), SIM Card ID, and data plan usage, is shared between us and the vehicle network carrier to provide the Vehicle Hotspot service in accordance with your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability, and may be used to enable a seamless transition from an old to new embedded modem and to confirm any updates are successfully delivered.*

Note: *For your convenience data usage may be available for monitoring under Settings but may not reflect actual or current usage. The vehicle network carrier is responsible for providing information about your account. Please contact the vehicle network carrier for more information.*

Note: *If you do not have an active vehicle hotspot data plan, open your web browser and go to a website using the HTTP protocol to be automatically redirected to the vehicle network carrier landing page where you can purchase data. Websites using HTTPS will not automatically redirect*

Note: *We may need to update operating system software on your vehicle, including security updates and bug fixes, to keep connected services current, like Vehicle Hotspot, without prior notice to you.*

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to active ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

Vehicle

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all of these features.*

You can select the following features to update their settings.

Door Keypad Code

Select this button to add or erase a personal door keypad code. To add or erase a personal code, you first need to enter the five-digit factory set code. You can find this code on the owner's wallet card in the glove box or from your authorized dealer.

DEALER ePROCESS

Camera Settings

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Rear Camera Delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider.

You can find more information on the rear-view camera system in the parking aids chapter of your owner's manual.

Onboard Modem Serial Number (ESN)

Selecting this button on the settings menu shows you the ESN number for your system. You need this number for certain registrations such as Satellite Radio.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Display

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Display Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. Tap the screen to switch it back on.	
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.	
Mode	You can select:	
	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.
	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.
	Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.	
Background	Set the background.	
Calm Screen	View less information in the display.	

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings by selecting the following options.

DEALER ePROCESS

Menu Item	
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contact's name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when you press the voice.

Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode, a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Note: *If the system is locked and you cannot remember the PIN, please contact the Customer Relationship Center.*

For Lincoln
United States: 1-800-521-4140
Canada: 1-800-387-9333

Ford	Lincoln
United States and Canada: 1-800-392-3673	United States: 1-800-521-4140
	Canada: 1-800-387-9333

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to the regional Ford or Lincoln website.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
There is background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and the lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
		Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.

DEALER ePROCESS

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC 3 phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Press the blue circle to the right of the device named with your vehicle make and model to enter the next menu. • Turn Show Notifications on. • Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone from the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update. Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the messaging application. Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
	The device is in a bad state.	Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format. See **Entertainment** (page 443).
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Update media index. See **Settings** (page 481).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.
SYNC 3 does not display the song information, repeat, or shuffle buttons.	The device or media player is incompatible.	Connect a compatible device or media player.

Wi-Fi Access Point issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Wi-Fi Access Point issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the access point, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the access point with the front of the vehicle facing the access point direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a access point.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the access point.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the access point. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the access point. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the access point if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
An access point is not listed in the list of available networks.	The access point was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Wi-Fi Access Point issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not currently provide a access point.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide an access point.
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the access point, access point is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped access point where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a access point and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected access point may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the access point requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

DEALER ePROCESS

AppLink Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find Mobile Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an Applink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps', then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Find Mobile Apps" on SYNC 3.
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.

DEALER ePROCESS

AppLink Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
	The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

DEALER ePROCESS

Personal Profiles	
Issue	**Possible cause and solution**
I cannot create a profile.	Personal Profiles have not been set up.
	An invalid profile name was entered.
	A memory button was not selected when prompted.
	The vehicle's ignition was not On and in Park or was shifted out of Run or Park while creating a profile.
	Personal Profiles is turned off.
I cannot link a keyfob.	The lock button was not selected on a keyfob when prompted.
	The keyfob selected was already associated to another profile and an overwrite was declined.
	A profile recall was performed while linking a keyfob.
	The vehicle's ignition was not On and in Park, or was shifted out of Run or Park while linking a keyfob.
	The old linking method is used.
My personalized settings do not save.	The unsaved setting is not supported by Personal Profiles.
	A different Personal Profile is active than expected.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Personal Profiles	
Issue	**Possible cause and solution**
	Another user has changed settings for the wrong Personal Profile.
My profile will not recall.	A Personal Profile has not been created.
	Personal Profiles is turned off.
	The requested profile is already active.
	The memory button being used is not linked to a profile.
	The keyfob being used is not linked to a profile.
	The wrong keyfob is being used.
	A button other than unlock or remote start is being pressed on a linked keyfob.
	The Personal Profile was deleted.
My preset positions recall but my profile does not.	Personal Profiles is turned off.
My profile recalls but my preset positions do not.	The vehicle is in motion.
	The preset positions are the same as the Guest or previously active profile.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Personal Profiles	
Issue	**Possible cause and solution**
I lost a keyfob.	Unlink and relink your keyfob in the Personal Profiles menu. You may need to see your authorized dealer.
I lost all profiles.	Keyfobs had been erased and reprogramed. This could happen if you let dealership add a new keyfob to replace lost one.
	Master Reset had been performed without your acknowledgement.

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

DEALER ePROCESS

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>|) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

For additional assistance with SYNC 3 troubleshooting, refer to the regional Ford or Lincoln website.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit our online store at:

Web Address (United States)
www.Accessories.Lincoln.com

You can also visit:

Web Address (Canada)
www.LincolnCanada.com

Lincoln Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Lincoln Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Lincoln Motor Company will warrant your Lincoln Original Accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Exterior Style

- Side window deflectors*.
- Splash guards.

Interior Style

- Console vault*.
- Floor liners.
- Floor mats.
- Rear seat entertainment system*.
- Sun shade*.
- Tablet cradle*.

Lifestyle

- Ash cup or coin holder.
- Bluetooth speakers*.
- Cargo organization and management.
- Cross bars*.
- Roof rack and carriers*.
- SUV camping tent*.
- Trailer towing products.

Peace of Mind

- Bumper protector.
- Car cover*.
- Cargo area protector.
- Cargo security shade.
- Remote start.
- Roadside assistance kits*.
- Vehicle security.
- Wheel locks.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

*Lincoln Licensed Accessory. The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Lincoln Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Lincoln Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Lincoln dealer for the accessory manufacturer's limited warranty details and request a copy of the Lincoln Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if their manufacturer did not design them specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Lincoln dealer add any non-Lincoln electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH LINCOLN PROTECT EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only)

Lincoln Protect means peace of mind. It's the extended service plan backed by the Lincoln Motor Company, and provides more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Lincoln Dealer, insist on genuine Lincoln Protect extended service plans!

Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plan Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One trip to the Service Center could easily exceed the price of your Lincoln Protect extended service plan. With Lincoln Protect you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Up to 1000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four mechanical Lincoln Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it's probably easier to list what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Lincoln Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Lincoln dealers in the U.S., Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Lincoln or Ford dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

Rental Car Reimbursement

1st day Rental Benefit

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we'll give you a loaner to use for the day.

Extended Rental Benefits

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and other transportation.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Lincoln Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Which should give you and your potential buyer a little more peace of mind.

Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

Lincoln Protect extended service plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc (if equipped).
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers and struts.
- Engine cooling hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Engine belts.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment (if equipped).

Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Lincoln Protect extended service plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Lincoln Protect extended service plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Complete the information below and mail to:

Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plan
P.O. Box 321067
Detroit, MI 48232

Lincoln Protect (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Lincoln Protect extended service plan. Lincoln Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Lincoln Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Lincoln Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

DEALER ePROCESS

There are several Lincoln Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Lincoln Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Lincoln Motor Company dealers.

Note: *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Lincoln Protect extended service plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Lincoln of Canada dealer or www.LincolnCanada.com to find the Lincoln Protect extended service plan that is right for you.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 388).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use our authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

DEALER ePROCESS

Your vehicle has an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, a message appears in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km), hybrid vehicles may exceed 10,000 mi (16,000 km).

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 322).

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5,000 mi (8,000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between oil change intervals,

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

We have recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. We rely upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the our Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance.

It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Check Every Month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.
Fuel and water separator. Drain if necessary (or if indicated by the information display).
Holes and slots in the tail pipe to make sure they are functional and clear of debris.

Check Every Six Months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Check Every Six Months
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Seatbelts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and seatbelt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Multi-Point Inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels[1]; fill if necessary	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure[2]
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

[1] Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

[2] If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

DEALER ePROCESS

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Interval	**Vehicle Use and Example**
7,500–10,000 mi (12,000–16,000 km)	**Normal**
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5,000–7,500 mi (8,000–12,000 km)	**Severe**
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Interval	**Vehicle Use and Example**
	Extended hot or cold operation
3,000–5,000 mi (5,000–8,000 km)	**Extreme**
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

Normal Maintenance Intervals

At Every Oil Change Interval as Indicated by the Information Display[1]
Change engine oil and filter.[2]
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection, recommended.
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.

DEALER ePROCESS

At Every Oil Change Interval as Indicated by the Information Display[1]
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints (All Wheel Drive only).
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints.
Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

[1] Do not exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between service intervals.

[2] Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 322).

Other Maintenance Items[1]	
Every 20,000 mi (32,000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100,000 mi (160,000 km)	Change engine coolant.[2]
Every 100,000 mi (160,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Other Maintenance Items [1]	
	Inspect accessory drive belt or belts. [3]
Every 150,000 mi (240,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt or belts. [4]

[1] Perform these maintenance items within 3,000 mi (4,800 km) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

[2] Initial replacement at six years or 100,000 mi (160,000 km), then every three years or 50,000 mi (80,000 km).

[3] After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

[4] If not replaced within the last 100,000 mi (160,000 km).

DEALER ePROCESS

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Towing a trailer or using a car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect rear axle and U-joints (AWD only).
	Inspect half-shaft boots.
	See axle maintenance items under **Exceptions**.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Extended Hot and Cold climate operation	
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km)	Change engine oil and filter.*

*Hot Climates only

DEALER ePROCESS

Operating in off-road (unpaved, sandy, dusty) and Mountainous conditions	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter.
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 322).

Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-

Axle and PTU maintenance: The Power Transfer Unit (PTU) and rear axle (AWD only) in your vehicle does not require any normal scheduled maintenance. The PTU lubricant may be more likely to require a fluid change if the vehicle has extended periods of extreme or severe duty cycle driving. Changing or checking the PTU lubricant is not necessary unless the unit has been submerged in water, shows sign of leakage. Contact your authorized dealer for service.

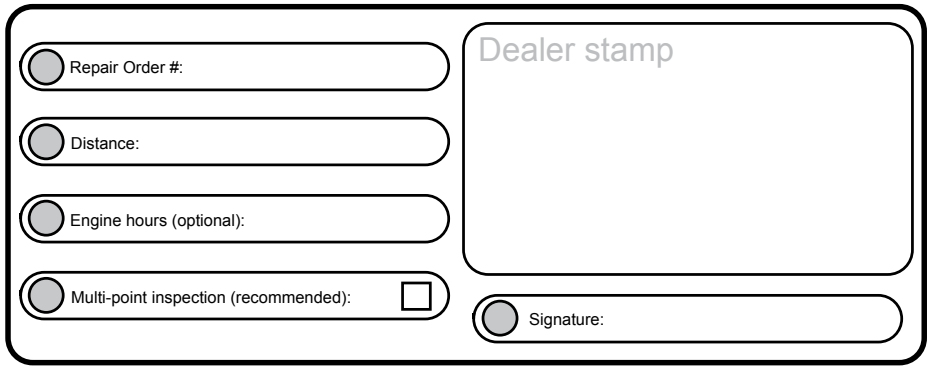
California fuel filter replacement: If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. We however, urge you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Engine air filter and cabin air filter replacement: The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

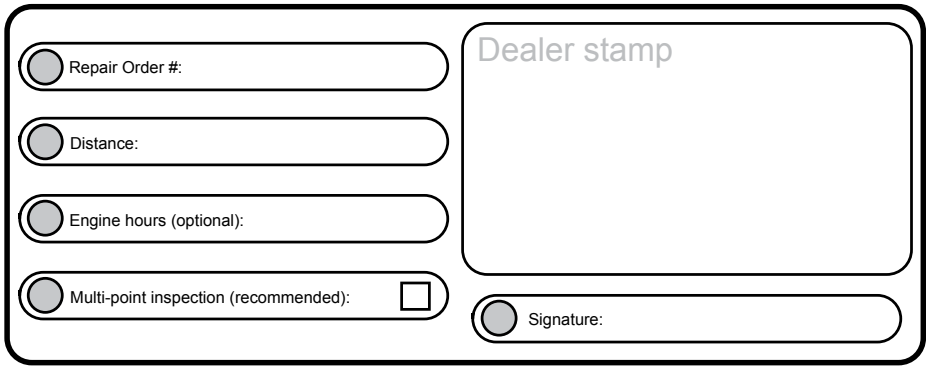
SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

After the scheduled maintenance services are performed, record the Repair Order #, Distance and Engine Hours in the boxes provided.

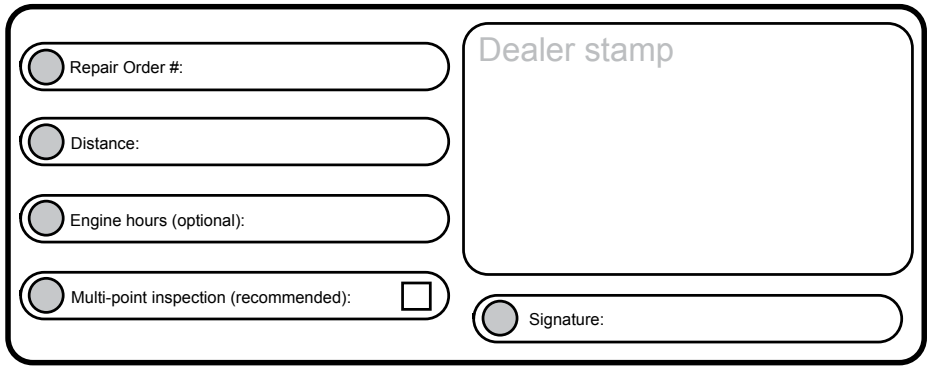
DEALER ePROCESS



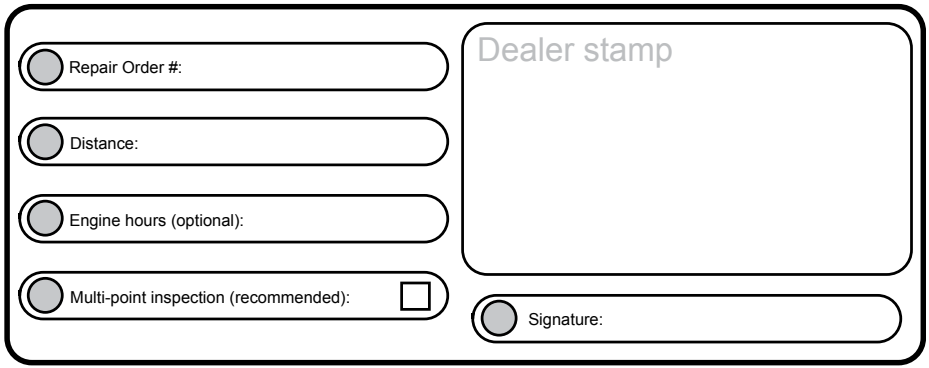
DEALER ePROCESS



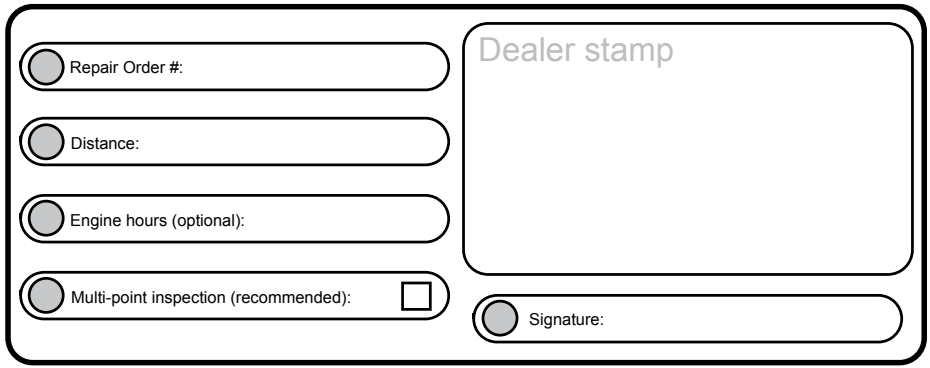
DEALER ePROCESS



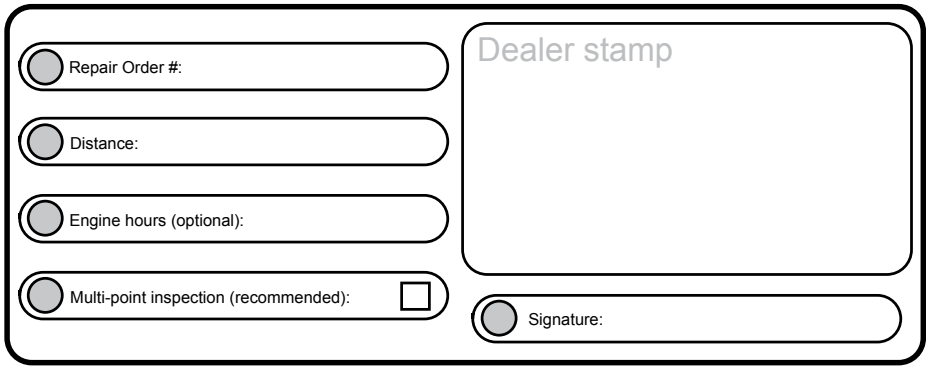
DEALER ePROCESS



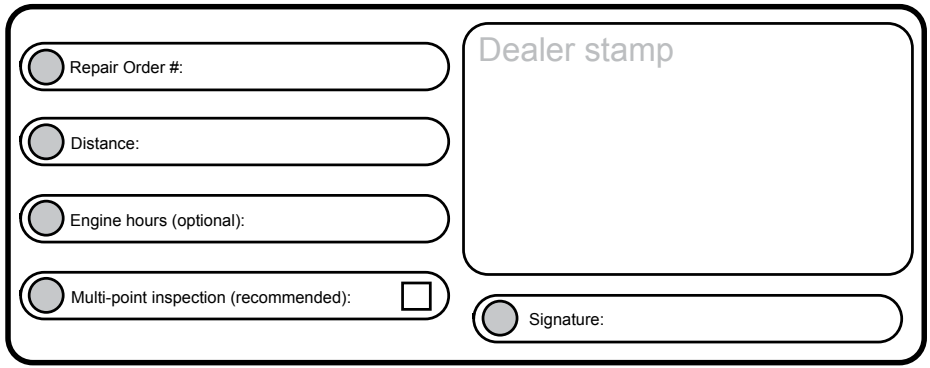
DEALER ePROCESS



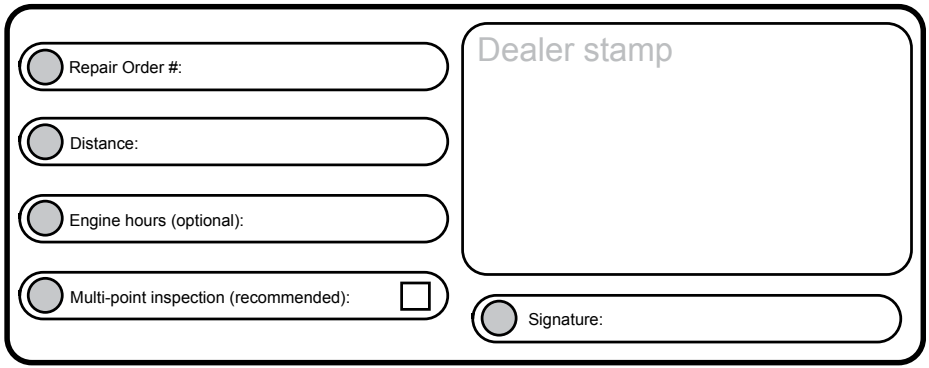
DEALER ePROCESS



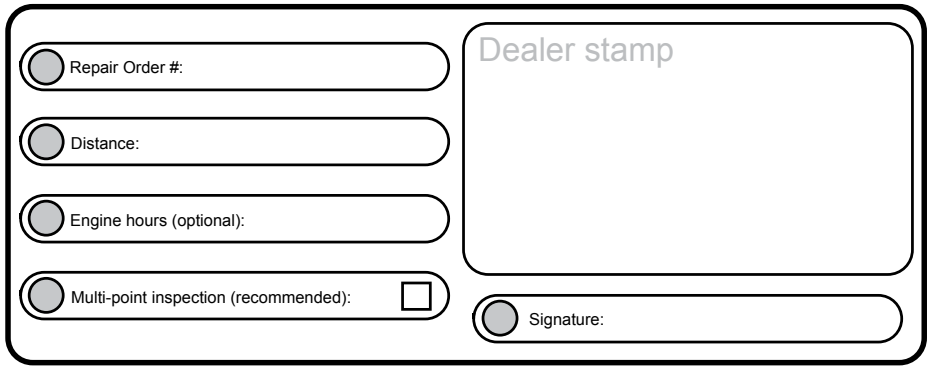
DEALER ePROCESS



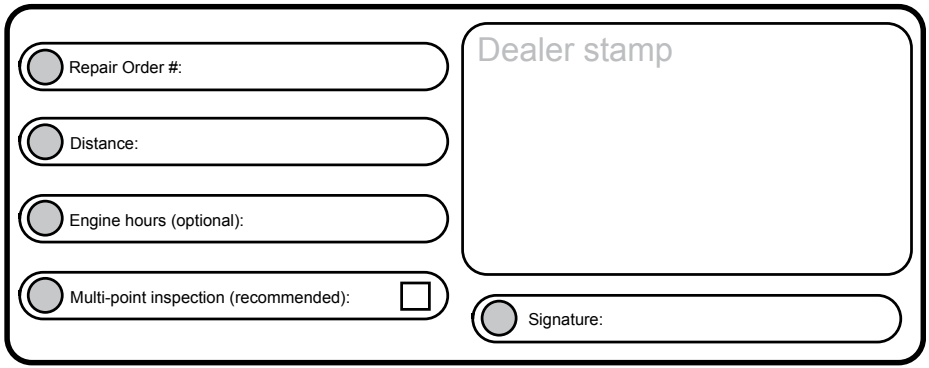
DEALER ePROCESS



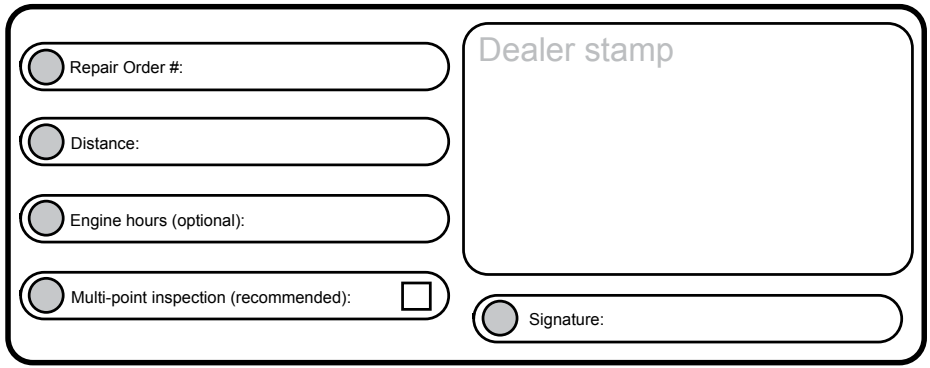
DEALER ePROCESS



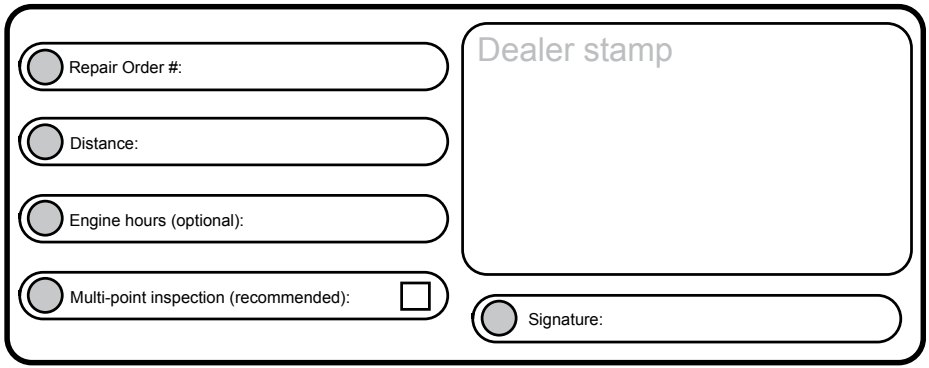
DEALER ePROCESS



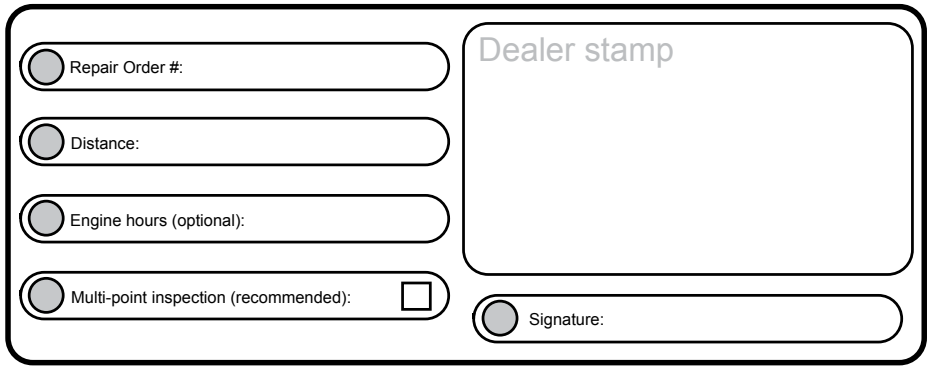
DEALER ePROCESS



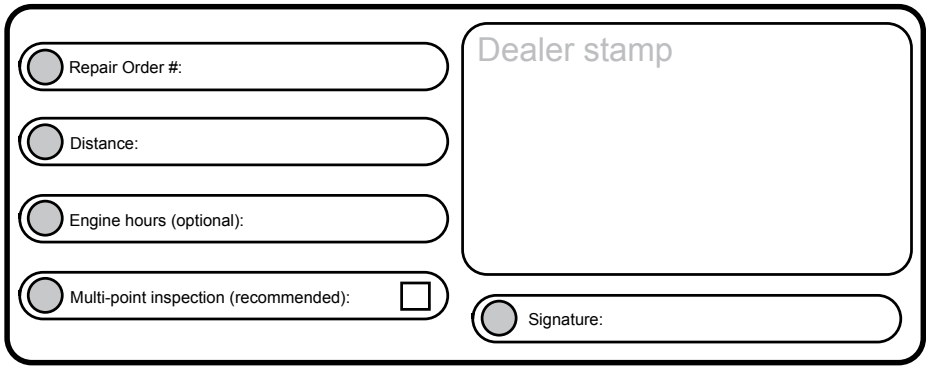
DEALER ePROCESS



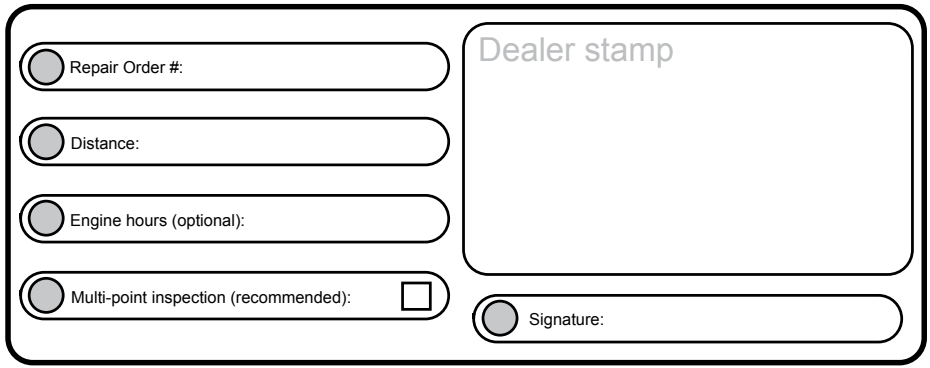
DEALER ePROCESS



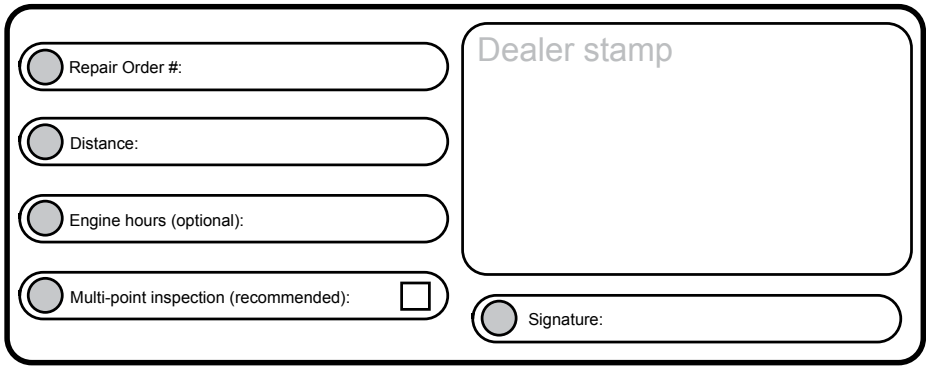
DEALER ePROCESS



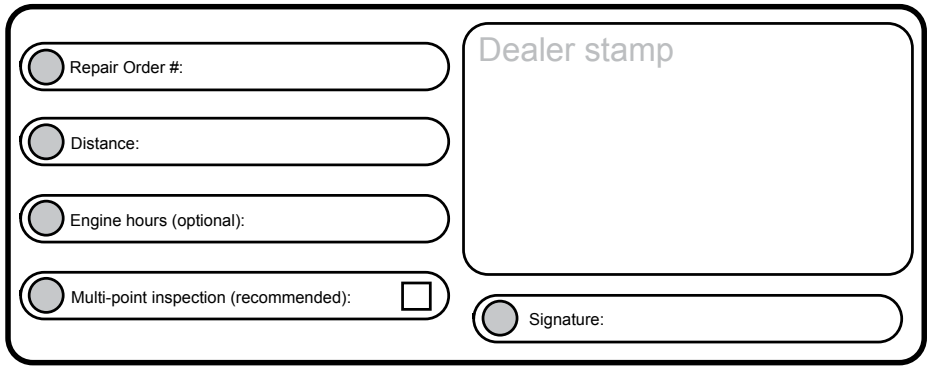
DEALER ePROCESS



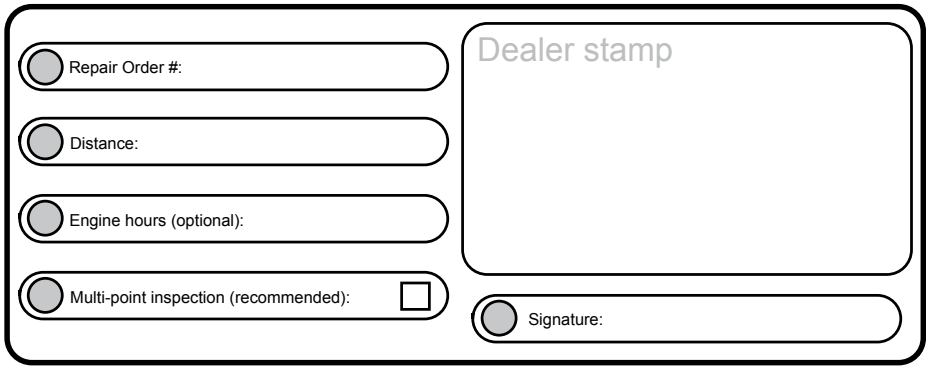
DEALER ePROCESS



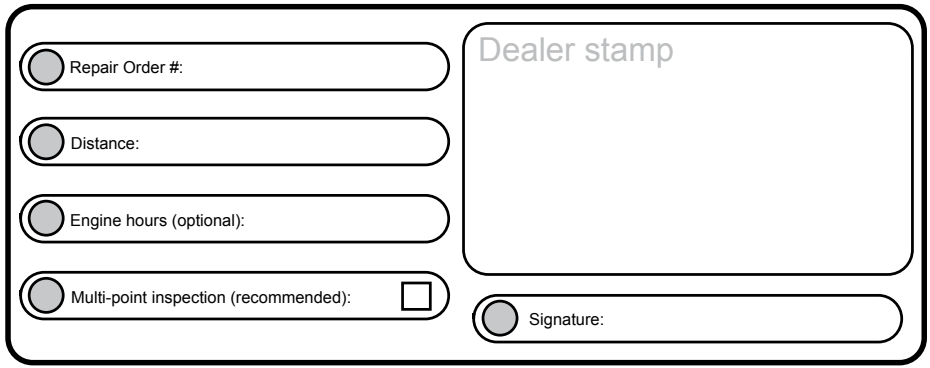
DEALER ePROCESS



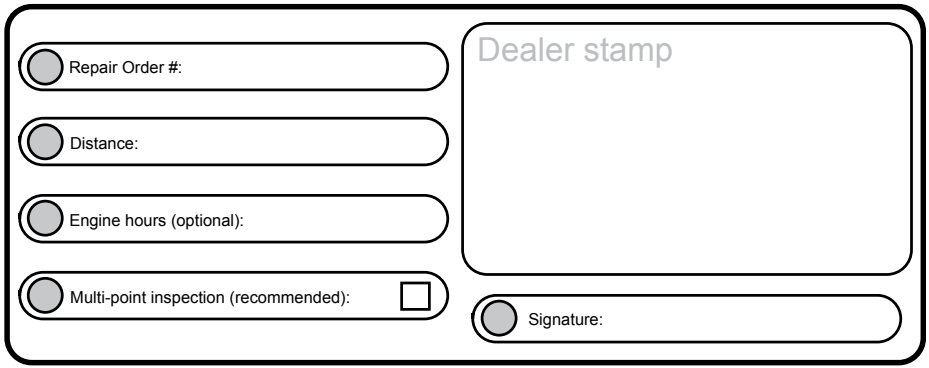
DEALER ePROCESS



DEALER ePROCESS



DEALER ePROCESS



DEALER ePROCESS

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

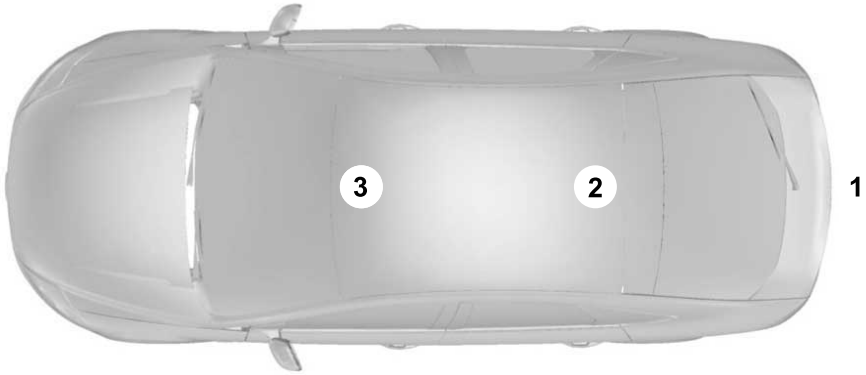
WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: *We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation (UNECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements.*

Note: *Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following table. We do not provide special provisions or conditions for installations or use.*

DEALER ePROCESS

Car



E239120

DEALER ePROCESS

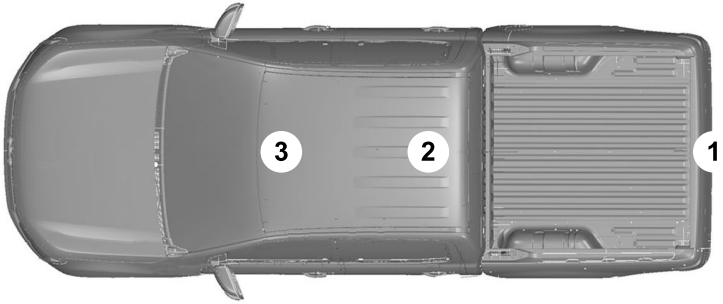
Van



E239122

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Truck



E239121

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3

DEALER ePROCESS

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

DEALER ePROCESS

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

DEALER ePROCESS

- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

DEALER ePROCESS

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL

DEALER ePROCESS

OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.

- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

DEALER ePROCESS

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR

DEALER ePROCESS

OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav (“Telenav”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in

DEALER ePROCESS

communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

DEALER ePROCESS

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

DEALER ePROCESS

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided

DEALER ePROCESS

under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l’Equipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client’s entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client’s paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client’s complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client’s obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client’s obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies)	Notice
Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may

DEALER ePROCESS

update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATITVES AND PERMITED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view

DEALER ePROCESS

it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

DEALER ePROCESS

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

DEALER ePROCESS

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Radio Frequency Statement

SYNC Version	FCC Identification Number	IC Identification Number
3.0	ACJ-SYNCG3-L	216B-SYNCG3-L
3.1	ACJ-FA-170-BCARHS	216B-FA170BCARHS
3.2	ACJ-FG-185-SG32MH	216B-FG185SG32MH

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

These devices comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device accepts any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation.

TYPE APPROVALS

Radio Frequency Certifications for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)

Argentina

Schrader AG2SZ4 Numero de Registro CNC: H-13498

E207816

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Brazil



E197509

Canada

IC: 850K-11545917

IC: 2546A-FP3

European Union EU

Herby, Schrader Electronics UK Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at emcteam@schrader.co.uk

E207818

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 3R88M14030

E253824

Jordan

Kingdom of Jordon Type approval for tyre pressre sensor
Model : AG2SZ4
Manufacturer:Schrader Electronics Ltd
Type Approval Number:TRC/LPD/2014/56
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E253823

Malaysia



E253822

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1238

E253812

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1249

E253813

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Moldova



E197811

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

E207821

Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/1752/14
D090258

E253817

Philippines



NTC
Type Approved
No:ESD-1408639C

E198001

Russia



E253816

Serbia



E197844

Singapore

Complies with
IDA Standards
DA 105282

E253820

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

South Africa



TA-2014/064

Approved

E198002

South Korea



E253819 MSIP-CRM-SRD-AG2SZ4

Taiwan



E203679

Ukraine



E253818

109

United Arab Emirates



E207817

United States of America

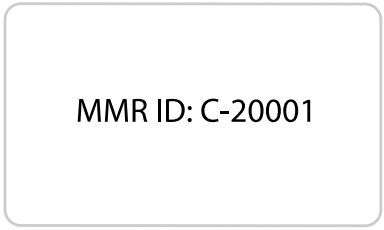
FCC ID: OUC11545917

FCC ID: MRXFP3

DEALER ePROCESS

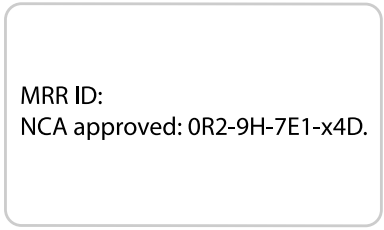
Radio Frequency Certifications for Mid Range Radar

Argentina



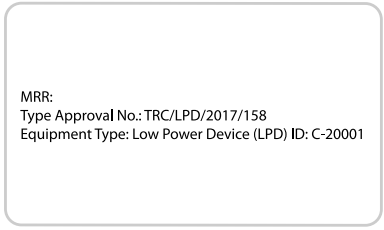
E269659

Ghana



E269662

Jordan



E269660

Morocco



E269661

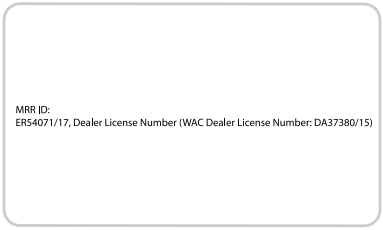
South Africa



E269664

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

United Arab Emirates



E269663

Radio Frequency Certifications for Passive Anti-Theft System

Argentina



E274065

Brazil



E269675

Canada

IC: 850K-11545917

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 243/MCPT/SC/16
Date d'agrément: 23/05/2016

E274068

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA- OUC11545917

E274067

Malaysia



E269673

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: NCA/TA/16/22

E269674

Jordan

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2013/235
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E269666

Morocco

N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 8922 ANRT 2014

E269670

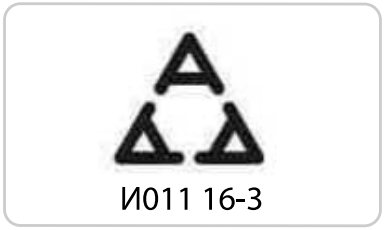
DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Paraguay



E274066

Serbia



E269672

South Africa



E269667

Pakistan



E275754

Singapore



E269676

Ukraine



E269671

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No. ER49115/16

E269668

Vietnam

So.No: A0364120416AF04A2



E269677

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 247/MCPT/SC/16
Date d'agrément: 23/05/2016

E272192

United States of America

FCC ID: OUC11545917

Radio Frequency Certifications for Radio Transceiver Module

Canada

IC: 3659A-F03AM315RX

IC: 3659A-F04AM902TRX

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA – F03-AM315RX

E272193

DEALER ePROCESS

Jordan

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2013/233
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E272194

Pakistan



E269684

Paraguay



E272195

Morocco

N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 12432 ANRT 2016

E269683



Date of issuance : 06/01/2015

E287633

Serbia



И011 16

E269681

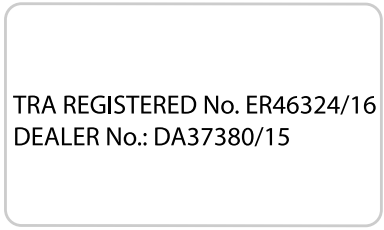
DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

South Africa



E269685

United Arab Emirates



E272196

Ghana



E269695

Ukraine



E269682

United States of America

FCC ID: LTQF03AM315RX

FCC ID: LTQF04AM902TRX

Radio Frequency Certifications for Blind Spot Information System

Canada

RSS-310 compliant, per FCC Test report no.: 1-8707/14-01-03

Malaysia



E269697

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

South Africa

TA-2015/444
APPROVED

E269696

United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No. ER39534/15
DEALER No.: DA37380/15

E269694

United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam
A0675110817AF04A2
ICT

E269693

Radio Frequency Certifications for Wireless Charging

United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER57347/17
DEALER No: DA37380/15

E272903

DEALER ePROCESS

South Korea



E273475

Radio Frequency Certifications for SYNC 3

Brazil

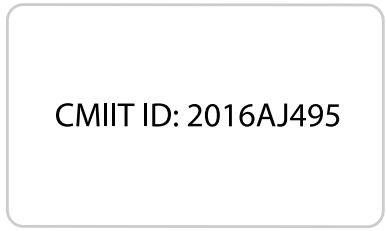


E252722



E282218

China



E291427

Radio Frequency Certifications for Cruise Control Module

Canada

IC: 3432A-0065TR

United States of America

FCC ID: L2C0065TR

Radio Frequency Certifications for Body Control Module

Canada

IC: 7812A-A2C738448

Model # : M : A2C750526

Model # : M : A2C750561

United States of America

FCC ID: M3NA2C738448

Model # : M : A2C750526

Model # : M : A2C750561

DEALER ePROCESS

Radio Frequency Certification for Keys and Remote Controls

Canada

IC : 7812A-A2C931423

IC: 7812A-A2C931426

IC: 3248A-A08TAA

IC: 3248A-A08TDA

China

CMIIT ID: 2016DJ219

E291429

CMIIT ID: 2016DJ2196

E291430

United States of America

FCC ID : M3N-A2C931423

FCC ID : M3N-A2C931426

FCC ID : N5F-A08TAA

FCC ID : N5F-A08TDA

Radio Frequency Statement for Audio Unit

Canada

IC: 3043A-UP375AHU

United States

FCC ID: NT8-16UP375AHU

DEALER ePROCESS

3

360 Degree Camera....226
Camera Views....226
Front Camera....227
Side Camera....228

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....138
About This Manual....7
ABS
See: Brakes....200
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....201
Accessories....519
Exterior Style....519
Interior Style....519
Lifestyle....519
Peace of Mind....519
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....14
ACC
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control....230
Active Park Assist....214
Using Active Park Assist....216
Adaptive Headlamps....95
System Check....95
Adjusting the Headlamps....332
Vertical Aim Adjustment....332
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column....82
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column....81
End of Travel Position....81
Memory Feature....82
AFS
See: Adaptive Headlamps....95
Airbag Disposal....54
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....138
Air Filter
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L...334
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.7L....335
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....80
All-Wheel Drive....195
Ambient Lighting....97
Adjusting the Brightness....98
Changing the Color....97
Switching Ambient Lighting Off....98
Switching Ambient Lighting On....97
Anti-Theft Alarm....80
Arming the Alarm....80
Disarming the Alarm....80
Appendices....557
Apps....478
....478
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link....479
At a Glance....18
Audible Warnings and Indicators....111
Headlamps On Warning Chime....111
Keyless Warning Alert....111
Parking Brake On Warning Chime....111
Audio Control....82
Seek, Next or Previous....83
Audio System....409
General Information....409
Audio Unit....411
Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse....413
Tune 413
Volume and Power....413
Auto Hold....204
Auto Hold Indicator....205
Switching Auto Hold On and Off....204
Using Auto Hold....204
Autolamps....91
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps....92
Automatic Climate Control....138
Setting the Blower Motor Speed....138

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Setting the Temperature....138
Switching Auto Mode On and Off....138
Switching Defrost On and Off....138
Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off....138
Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off....139
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off....139
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off....138
Switching the Climate Control On and Off....138
Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off....139
Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off....139
Automatic High Beam Control....93
Automatic High Beam Indicator....94
Switching the System On and Off....94
Automatic Transmission....188
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning....194
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow....194
Manual Park Release....192
Push Button Shift Transmission....188
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission....191
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....328
Auto-Start-Stop....174
Disabling Auto-Start-Stop....175
Enabling Auto-Start-Stop....174
Autowipers....87
Autowipers Settings....87
Auxiliary Power Points....162
110 Volt AC Power Point....162
12 Volt DC Power Point....162
USB Port and Power Point Locations....162
AWD
See: All-Wheel Drive....195

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....329
Blind Spot Information System....248
....248
Switching the System On and Off....249
System Errors....249
Using the Blind Spot Information System....248
BLIS
See: Blind Spot Information System....248
Body Styling Kits....346
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....316
Booster Seats....29
Types of Booster Seats....29
Brake Fluid Check....328
Brakes....200
General Information....200
Breaking-In....279
Brakes and Clutch....279
Engine....279
Tires....279
Bulb Specification Chart....407

C

Cabin Air Filter....141
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L....394
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates....399
Specifications....395
Capacities and Specifications - 2.7L....400
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates....406
Specifications....402
Capacities and Specifications....388
Cargo Nets....264
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....338
Catalytic Converter....185
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)....186

DEALER ePROCESS

Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing....187
Center Console....166
Changing a Bulb....334
LED Lamps....334
Changing a Fuse....313
Fuses....313
Changing a Road Wheel....378
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information....379
Stowing the flat tire....384
Tire Change Procedure....380
Changing the 12V Battery....329
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L....334
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.7L....335
Changing the Wiper Blades....331
Front Wiper Blades....331
Rear Window Wiper Blade....332
Checking MyKey System Status....63
MyKey Distance....63
Number of Admin Keys....64
Number of MyKeys....63
Checking the Wiper Blades....331
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance....41
Child Restraint Positioning....31
Child Safety....20
General Information....20
Child Safety Locks....33
Left-Hand Side....34
Right-Hand Side....34
Cleaning Leather Seats....343
Cleaning Products....337
Materials....337
Cleaning the Engine....340
Cleaning the Exterior....338
Cleaning the Headlamps....338
Exterior Chrome Parts....339
Exterior Plastic Parts....339
Stripes or Graphics....339
Underbody....339
Under Hood....339
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens....343
Cleaning the Interior....341
Cleaning Black Label or Presidential Interior....341
Cleaning the Wheels....344
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades....340
Clearing All MyKeys....63
Climate....456
Accessing Rear Climate Controls....458
Accessing the Climate Control Menu....456
Directing the Airflow....456
Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator....459
Setting the Blower Motor Speed....457
Setting the Temperature....457
Switching Auto Mode On and Off....457
Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off....457
Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off....458
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off....458
Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off....459
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off....458
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off....457
Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off....457
Switching the Climate Control On and Off....457
Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off....458
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off....458
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off....458
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off....458
Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off....459

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off....459
Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off....459
Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off....458
Climate Control....138
Climate Controlled Seats....155
Ventilated Seats....156
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....323
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....53
Creating a MyKey....62
Programming and Changing Configurable Settings....63
Cross Traffic Alert....250
Blocked Sensors....253
Switching the System Off and On....253
System Errors....253
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts....253
System Limitations....253
Using the Cross Traffic Alert System....250
Cruise Control....83
Adaptive Cruise Control....84
Cruise Control....83
Principle of Operation....229
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control....229
Customer Assistance....288

D

Data Recording....10
911 Assist Privacy Notice....13
Comfort, Convenience and Entertainment Data....12
Event Data....11
Service Data....10
Services That Third Parties Provide....12
Services That We Provide....12
Vehicles With a Modem....12
Vehicles With SYNC....13
Daytime Running Lamps....93
Type One - Conventional (Non-Configurable)....93
Type Two - Configurable....93
Declaration of Conformity....593
Radio Frequency Statement....593
Direction Indicators....96
Indicating a Lane Change....96
Doors and Locks....66
Drive Control....261
EcoCoach....262
LINCOLN DRIVE CONTROL....261
Driver Alert....241
Using Driver Alert....242
Driver and Passenger Airbags....45
Children and Airbags....46
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment....46
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags....51
Driving Aids....241
Driving Hints....279
Driving Through Water....280
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps....93

E

Economical Driving....279
Electric Parking Brake....201
Applying the Electric Parking Brake....201
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....202
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....202
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge....202
Electromagnetic Compatibility....557

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Emission Law.....184
Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance.....185
Tampering With a Noise Control System.....184
End User License Agreement.....562
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA).....562
Engine Block Heater.....172
Using the Engine Block Heater.....173
Engine Coolant Check.....323
Adding Coolant.....324
Coolant Change.....326
Engine Coolant Temperature Management.....327
Fail-Safe Cooling.....326
Recycled Coolant.....325
Severe Climates.....325
Engine Emission Control.....184
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....78
Engine Oil Check.....321
Adding Engine Oil.....322
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L.....321
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.7L.....321
Engine Specifications - 2.0L.....388
Drivebelt Routing.....388
Engine Specifications - 2.7L.....389
Drivebelt Routing.....389
Entertainment.....443
AM/FM Radio.....445
Apps.....456
Bluetooth Stereo or USB.....454
CD (If equipped).....453
HD Radio™ Information (If Available).....449
SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated).....445
Sources.....444
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....456
USB Ports.....456
Environment.....17
EPB
See: Electric Parking Brake.....201
Essential Towing Checks.....275
Before Towing a Trailer.....276
Hitches.....275
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC).....276
Safety Chains.....275
Trailer Brakes.....275
Trailer Lamps.....275
When Towing a Trailer.....276
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording.....10
Export Unique Options.....16
Exterior Mirrors.....100
Auto-dimming Feature.....102
Auto-Folding Mirrors.....101
Blind Spot Information System.....102
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....101
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....102
Lincoln Welcome Mat.....102
Memory Mirrors.....102
Power Exterior Mirrors.....100
Signal Indicator Mirrors.....102

F

Fastening the Seatbelts.....36
Seatbelt Locking Modes.....37
Using a Sliding Clip.....36
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....37
Flat Tire
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....378
Flat Tire Inflation
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....349
Floor Mats.....281
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps.....95
Front Fog Lamps.....95
Front Parking Aid.....211
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....212
Front Passenger Sensing System.....47

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Fuel and Refueling....177
Fuel Consumption....183
Advertised Capacity....183
Fuel Economy....183
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....178
Fuel Filter....329
Fuel Quality....178
Choosing the Right Fuel....178
Fuel Shutoff....283
Fuses....297
Fuse Specification Chart....297
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel....308
Power Distribution Box....297

G

Garage Door Opener....157
Garage Door Opener
See: Universal Garage Door Opener....157
Gauges....105
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....106
Fuel Gauge....106
Left and Right Information Group....106
Status Bar....106
Gearbox
See: Transmission....188
General Information on Radio Frequencies....55
Intelligent Access....55
General Maintenance Information....524
Multi-Point Inspection....527
Owner Checks and Services....526
Protecting Your Investment....524
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?....524
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?....524
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada....292
Getting the Services You Need....288
Away From Home....288
Global Opening and Closing....100
Closing the Windows....100
Opening the Windows....100
Glove Compartment....166
Manual Entry....166

H

Hazard Flashers....283
Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps....332
Headlamp Exit Delay....93
Headrest
See: Head Restraints....143
Head Restraints....143
Front Seat Manual Head Restraints....143
Rear Seat Center Head Restraint....144
Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints....144
Heated Exterior Mirrors....140
Heated Rear Window....140
Heated Seats....154
Front Seats....154
Rear Seats....154
Heated Steering Wheel....85
Heated Windshield....140
Windshield Wiper De-Icer....140
Heating
See: Climate Control....138
Hill Start Assist....203
Switching the System On and Off....203
Using Hill Start Assist....203
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....139
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather....140
General Hints....139
Quickly Cooling the Interior....140
Quickly Heating the Interior....140
Recommended Settings for Cooling....140
Recommended Settings for Heating....140
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....201

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Home Screen....431
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....316

I

In California (U.S. Only)....289
Information Display Control....84
Information Displays....112
General Information....112
Information Messages....118
Active Park....119
Adaptive Cruise Control....119
Adaptive Headlamps....120
Adaptive Steering....121
Airbag....121
Alarm....121
Automatic Engine Shutdown....122
AWD....122
Battery and Charging System....123
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System....124
Doors and Locks....124
Driver Alert....125
Fuel....126
Hill Start Assist....126
Keys and Intelligent Access....126
Lane Keeping System....128
Maintenance....128
MyKey....130
Park Aid....131
Park Brake....131
Power Steering....132
Pre-Collision Assist....133
Remote Start....133
Seats....133
Stability Control....134
Starting System....134
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....135
Transmission....135
Installing Child Restraints....22
Child Seats....22
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts....22
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH)....25
Using Tether Straps....27
Instrument Cluster....105
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....92
Vehicles With Front Fog Lamps....92
Vehicles Without Front Fog Lamps....92
Instrument Panel....18
Interior Lamps....96
Front Interior Lamp....96
Interior Lamp Function....97
Rear Interior Lamps....97
Switching All of the Interior Lamps Off....97
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On....97
Switching the Individual Map Lamps On and Off....97
Interior Mirror....102
Auto-Dimming Mirror....102
Introduction....7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....284
Connecting the Jumper Cables....285
Jump Starting....285
Preparing Your Vehicle....284
Removing the Jumper Cables....286

K

Keyless Entry....70
SECURICODE™ Keyless Entry Keypad....70
Keyless Starting....168
Ignition Modes....168
Keys and Remote Controls....55

L

Lane Keeping System....242
Switching the System On and Off....243
Liftgate....74

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Lighting Control....90
Flashing the Headlamp High Beam....91
Headlamp High Beam....91
Lighting....90
General Information....90
Lincoln Automotive Financial Services....14
Lincoln Protect....521
Lincoln Protect (CANADA ONLY)....522
Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only)....521
Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers....266
Load Carrying....264
Load Limit....267
Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles....271
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer....267
Locking and Unlocking....66
Activating Intelligent Access....68
Autolock....69
Auto Relock....69
Autounlock....70
Battery Saver....70
Illuminated Entry....70
Illuminated Exit....70
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade....67
Power Door Locks....66
Remote Control....66
Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys....69
Luggage Covers....265
Installing the Luggage Cover....266
Operating the Luggage Cover....265
Removing the Luggage Cover....266
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....378

M

Maintenance....316
General Information....316
Media Hub....414
Memory Function....149
Easy Entry and Exit Feature....150
Personal Profiles....151
Saving a PreSet Position....150
Message Center
See: Information Displays....112
Mirrors
See: Windows and Mirrors....99
Mobile Communications Equipment....16
Moonroof....103
Bounce-Back....104
Opening and Closing the Moonroof....104
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L....390
Motorcraft Parts - 2.7L....391
MyKey – Troubleshooting....64
MyKey™....61
Principle of Operation....61

N

Navigation....467
cityseeker....476
Destination Mode....468
Map Mode....467
Navigation Map Updates....477
Navigation Menu....473
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link....477
SYNC AppLink....476
Waypoints....475
Normal Scheduled Maintenance....529
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™....529
Normal Maintenance Intervals....530

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset....322

DEALER ePROCESS

Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....321
Opening and Closing the Hood....316
Closing the Hood....317
Opening the Hood....316
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature....294
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual....294
Overhead Console....167

P

Parking Aids....210
Principle of Operation....210
Passive Anti-Theft System....78
SecuriLock™....78
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....78
Perchlorate....14
Personal Safety System™....43
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?....43
Phone....459
During a Phone Call....464
Making Calls....463
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....459
Phone Menu....460
Receiving Calls....464
Smartphone Connectivity....466
Text Messaging....465
Post-Crash Alert System....286
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....66
Power Liftgate....74
Hands-Free Feature....77
Obstacle Detection....77
Opening and Closing the Liftgate....75
Setting the Liftgate Open Height....76
Stopping the Liftgate Movement....76
Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off....77
Power Seats....146
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....148
Adjusting the Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion....148
Power Windows....99
Accessory Delay....100
Bounce-Back....99
One-Touch Down....99
One-Touch Up....99
Window Lock....100
Pre-Collision Assist....255
Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings....258
Blocked Sensors....259
Distance Indication and Alert....257
Evasive Steer Assist....258
Using the Pre-Collision Assist System....256
Protecting the Environment....17
Puncture
See: Changing a Road Wheel....378

R

Rear Parking Aid....211
Obstacle Distance Indicator....211
Rear Seats....153
Adjusting the Rear Seats....153
Rear Under Floor Storage....264
Cargo Management System....264
In-Floor Storage - Second Row....264
Rear View Camera....223
Camera Guidelines....224
Manual Zoom....225
Obstacle Distance Indicator....225
Rear Camera Delay....225
Using the Rear View Camera System....223
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera....223
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....88
Rear Camera Washer....89
Rear Window Washer....89
Rear Window Wiper....88
Recommended Towing Weights....273

DEALER ePROCESS

Reduced Engine Performance.....279
Refueling.....180
Refueling System Overview.....180
Refueling System Warning.....182
Refueling Your Vehicle.....181
Remote Control.....55
Car Finder.....58
Intelligent Access Key.....55
Memory Feature.....59
Remote Start.....58
Replacing the Battery.....56
Sounding the Panic Alarm.....58
Remote Start.....141
Automatic Settings.....141
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....344
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....14
Collision Repairs.....15
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....14
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....15
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....60
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....295
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....295
Roadside Assistance.....282
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance.....283
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance.....282
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance.....282
Roadside Emergencies.....282
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....266
Running-In
See: Breaking-In.....279
Running Out of Fuel.....179
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....179
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....179

S

Safety Canopy™.....51
Safety Precautions.....177
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....536
Scheduled Maintenance.....524
Seatbelt Extension.....42
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....38
Seatbelt Reminder.....40
Belt-Minder™.....40
Seatbelts.....35
Principle of Operation.....35
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....39
Conditions of operation.....39
Seats.....142
Security.....78
Settings.....481
911 Assist.....489
Ambient Lighting.....498
Bluetooth.....484
Clock.....483
Display.....500
General.....495
Media Player.....482
Mobile Apps.....494
Navigation.....491
Phone.....484
Radio.....490
SiriusXM.....491
Sound.....481
Valet Mode.....501
Vehicle.....498
Voice Control.....500
Wi-Fi & Hotspot.....496
Side Airbags.....50
Side Sensing System.....213
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....213
Sitting in the Correct Position.....142
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains.....371
Spare Wheel
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....378

DEALER ePROCESS

Special Notices.....15
New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....15
On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector.....15
Special Instructions.....15
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....533
Exceptions.....535
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control.....229
Stability Control.....207
Principle of Operation.....207
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....169
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....171
Failure to Start.....170
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....172
Important Ventilating Information.....172
Keyless Starting.....169
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....171
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....171
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....168
General Information.....168
Steering.....254
Adaptive Steering.....255
Electric Power Steering.....254
Steering Wheel.....81
Storage Compartments.....166
Sunroof
See: Moonroof.....103
Sun Visors.....103
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....103
Supplementary Restraints System.....44
Principle of Operation.....44
Symbols Glossary.....7
SYNC™ 3.....415
General Information.....415
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....501

T

Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....388
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....290
Tire Care.....356
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....358
Important Information About Low-Profile Tires.....356
Important Information About Sport Tires and Wheels.....356
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading.....357
Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall.....359
Notice to Crossover Vehicle Owners.....357
Temperature A B C.....358
Tire Rotation.....370
Traction AA A B C.....358
Treadwear.....358
Tire Inflation When Punctured
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....349
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....372
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....373
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....374
Tire Repair Kit
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....349
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....349
First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air.....351
General Information.....349
Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.....353
Tips for Use of the Kit.....350
What to Do After the Tire Has Been Sealed.....354
What to do When a Tire Is Punctured.....351
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires.....347
Towing a Trailer.....272
Load Placement.....272

DEP
DEALER ePROCESS

Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 2.0L....277
Emergency Towing....277
Recreational Towing....277
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 2.7L....277
Emergency Towing....277
Recreational Towing....278
Towing....272
Traction Control....206
Principle of Operation....206
Trailer Sway Control....273
Transmission Code Designation....393
Transmission....188
Transporting the Vehicle....287
Type Approvals....593
China....605
Radio Frequency Certification for Keys and Remote Controls....606
Radio Frequency Certifications for Blind Spot Information System....603
Radio Frequency Certifications for Body Control Module....605
Radio Frequency Certifications for Cruise Control Module....605
Radio Frequency Certifications for Mid Range Radar....597
Radio Frequency Certifications for Passive Anti-Theft System....598
Radio Frequency Certifications for Radio Transceiver Module....601
Radio Frequency Certifications for SYNC 3....605
Radio Frequency Certifications for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)....593
Radio Frequency Certifications for Wireless Charging....604
Radio Frequency Statement for Audio Unit....606

U

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L....318
Under Hood Overview - 2.7L....319
Unique Driving Characteristics....174
Universal Garage Door Opener....157
HomeLink Wireless Control System....157
USB Port....413
Using Adaptive Cruise Control....230
Automatic Cancellation....234
Blocked Sensor....236
Canceling the Set Speed....234
Changing the Set Speed....233
Detection Issues....234
Following a Vehicle....232
Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop....232
Hilly Condition Usage....234
Overriding the Set Speed....233
Park Brake Application....234
Resuming the Set Speed....234
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed....231
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary....231
Setting the Gap Distance....232
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off....234
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On....231
Switching to Normal Cruise Control....238
System Not Available....236
Using Lane Centering....238
Using All-Wheel Drive....195
Driving in Special Conditions with All-Wheel Drive (AWD)....195
Using Cruise Control....229
Canceling the Set Speed....230
Changing the Set Speed....229
Resuming the Set Speed....230
Setting the Cruise Speed....229
Switching Cruise Control Off....230
Switching Cruise Control On....229
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....64
Using Snow Chains....371

DEALER ePROCESS

Using Stability Control.....208
Electronic Stability Control.....208
Using Summer Tires.....370
Using Traction Control.....206
Switching the System Off.....206
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....206
Using a Switch.....206
Using Voice Recognition.....432
Audio Voice Commands.....434
Climate Voice Commands.....435
Mobile App Voice Commands.....440
Navigation Voice Commands.....438
Phone Voice Commands.....436
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands.....441
Voice Settings Commands.....441
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....291

V

Vehicle Care.....337
General Information.....337
Vehicle Certification Label.....392
Vehicle Identification Number.....392
Vehicle Storage.....345
Battery.....346
Body.....345
Brakes.....346
Cooling system.....346
Engine.....345
Fuel system.....345
General.....345
Miscellaneous.....346
Removing Vehicle From Storage.....346
Tires.....346
Ventilation
See: Climate Control.....138
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....392
Voice Control.....83

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....107
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator.....107
Adaptive Steering.....107
Airbag Warning Lamp.....107
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....108
Auto Hold Active.....108
Auto Hold Unavailable.....108
Automatic High Beam Control.....108
Battery.....108
Blind Spot Information System Indicator.....108
Brake System Warning Lamp.....108
Cruise Control Indicator.....109
Direction Indicator.....109
Door Ajar.....109
Electric Park Brake.....109
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp.....109
Fasten Rear Seatbelt.....109
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....109
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....109
Headlamp High Beam Indicator.....109
Hill Start Assist.....109
Hood Ajar.....109
Liftgate Ajar.....110
Low Beam Malfunction Warning.....110
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....110
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....110
Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Lamp.....110
Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....110
Parking Lamps.....110
Powertrain Fault.....110
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....110
Service Engine Soon.....110
Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator.....111
Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....111
Washer Fluid Check.....329

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....338
See: Wipers and Washers....86
Waxing....339
Welcome Lighting....96
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....378
Wheels and Tires....347
General Information....347
Technical Specifications....386
Windows and Mirrors....99
Windshield Washers....88
Front Camera Washer....88
Windshield Wipers....86
Intermittent Wipe....86
Speed Dependent Wipers....86
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades....331
Wipers and Washers....86
Wireless Accessory Charging....163

DEP DEALER ePROCESS

Nautilus (CD9) Canada/United States of America, enUSA, Edition date: 201806, Third-Printing-